Table of Contents

Introduction	**4**
Instrument Cluster	**12**
Warning and control lights	12
Gauges	16
Entertainment Systems	**20**
AM/FM stereo	20
AM/FM stereo with CD	22
AM/FM stereo cassette with CD	25
AM/FM stereo with in-dash six CD	28
Climate Controls	**33**
Heater only	33
Manual heating and air conditioning	34
Automatic temperature control	36
Lights	**39**
Headlamps	39
Turn signal control	44
Bulb replacement	45
Driver Controls	**54**
Windshield wiper/washer control	54
Steering wheel adjustment	55
Moon roof	56
Power windows	57
Mirrors	59
Speed control	62
Message center	66
Locks and Security	**79**
Keys	79
Locks	79

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Table of Contents

Seating and Safety Restraints	**89**
Seating	89
Safety restraints	96
Air bags	107
Child restraints	116
Tires, Wheels and Loading	**128**
Tire Information	132
Tire Inflation	133
Changing tires	137
Wheel lug nut torque	148
Vehicle loading	160
Trailer towing	167
Trailer Brake Controller-Integrated	171
Recreational towing	177
Driving	**178**
Starting	178
Brakes	183
Transmission operation	187
Roadside Emergencies	**213**
Getting roadside assistance	213
Hazard flasher switch	214
Fuel pump shut-off switch	214
Fuses and relays	215
Jump starting	224
Wrecker towing	229
Customer Assistance	**231**
Reporting safety defects (U.S. only)	239
Cleaning	**240**

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Table of Contents

Maintenance and Specifications 247

Engine compartment 249
Engine oil 251
Battery 255
Engine Coolant 257
Fuel information 263
Air filter(s) 280
Part numbers 282
Refill capacities 283
Lubricant specifications 286

Accessories 299

Index 302

All rights reserved. Reproduction by any means, electronic or mechanical including photocopying, recording or by any information storage and retrieval system or translation in whole or part is not permitted without written authorization from Ford Motor Company. Ford may change the contents without notice and without incurring obligation.

Copyright © 2004 Ford Motor Company

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

CALIFORNIA Proposition 65 Warning

WARNING: Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.

CONGRATULATIONS

Congratulations on acquiring your new Ford. Please take the time to get well acquainted with your vehicle by reading this handbook. The more you know and understand about your vehicle, the greater the safety and pleasure you will derive from driving it.

For more information on Ford Motor Company and its products visit the following website:

- In the United States: www.ford.com
- In Canada: www.ford.ca
- In Australia: www.ford.com.au
- In Mexico: www.ford.com.mx

Additional owner information is given in separate publications.

This *Owner's Guide* describes every option and model variant available and therefore some of the items covered may not apply to your particular vehicle. Furthermore, due to printing cycles it may describe options before they are generally available.

Remember to pass on this *Owner's Guide* when reselling the vehicle. It is an integral part of the vehicle.

Fuel pump shut-off switch: In the event of an accident the safety switch will automatically cut off the fuel supply to the engine. The switch can also be activated through sudden vibration (e.g. collision when parking). To reset the switch, refer to the *Fuel pump shut-off switch* in the *Roadside Emergencies* chapter.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

SAFETY AND ENVIRONMENT PROTECTION

Warning symbols in this guide

How can you reduce the risk of personal injury to yourself or others? In this guide, answers to such questions are contained in comments highlighted by the warning triangle symbol. These comments should be read and observed.

Warning symbols on your vehicle

When you see this symbol, it is imperative that you consult the relevant section of this guide before touching or attempting adjustment of any kind.

Protecting the environment

We must all play our part in protecting the environment. Correct vehicle usage and the authorized disposal of waste, cleaning and lubrication materials are significant steps towards this aim. Information in this respect is highlighted in this guide with the tree symbol.

BREAKING-IN YOUR VEHICLE

Your vehicle does not need an extensive break-in. Try not to drive continuously at the same speed for the first 1,000 miles (1,600 km) of new vehicle operation. Vary your speed frequently in order to give the moving parts a chance to break in.

Drive your new vehicle for at least 500 miles (800 km) before towing a trailer or snowplowing.

Do not add friction modifier compounds or special break-in oils during the first few thousand miles (kilometers) of operation, since these additives may prevent piston ring seating. See *Engine oil* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter for more information on oil usage.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Introduction

SPECIAL NOTICES

Emission warranty

The New Vehicle Limited Warranty includes Bumper-to-Bumper Coverage, Safety Restraint Coverage, Corrosion Coverage, and 6.0L Power Stroke Diesel Engine Coverage. In addition, your vehicle is eligible for Emissions Defect and Emissions Performance Warranties. For a detailed description of what is covered and what is not covered, refer to the *Warranty Guide* that is provided to you along with your *Owner's Guide*.

Service Data Recording

Service data recorders in your vehicle are capable of collecting and storing diagnostic information about your vehicle. This potentially includes information about the performance or status of various systems and modules in the vehicle, such as engine, throttle, steering or brake systems. In order to properly diagnose and service your vehicle, Ford Motor Company, Ford of Canada, and service and repair facilities may access vehicle diagnostic information through a direct connection to your vehicle when diagnosing or servicing your vehicle.

Event Data Recording

Other modules in your vehicle — event data recorders — are capable of collecting and storing data during a crash or near crash event. The recorded information may assist in the investigation of such an event. The modules may record information about both the vehicle and the occupants, potentially including information such as:

- how various systems in your vehicle were operating;
- whether or not the driver and passenger seatbelts were buckled;
- how far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or the brake pedal;
- how fast the vehicle was traveling; and
- where the driver was positioning the steering wheel.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

To access this information, special equipment must be directly connected to the recording modules. Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada do not access event data recorder information without obtaining consent, unless pursuant to court order or where required by law enforcement, other government authorities or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of Ford Motor Company and Ford of Canada.

Vehicle Modification Data Recording

Some aftermarket products may cause severe engine and/or transmission damage; refer to the *What is not covered* section in *The new vehicle limited warranty for your vehicle* chapter of your vehicle's *Warranty Guide* for more information. Some vehicles are equipped with Powertrain Control Systems that can detect and store information about vehicle modifications that increase horsepower and torque output; this information cannot be erased and will stay in the system's memory even if the modification is removed. When a dealer or repair facility works on your vehicle, it may be necessary for them to access the information in the Powertrain Control System. This information will likely identify if any unauthorized modifications have been made to the system and may be used to determine if repairs will be covered by warranty.

Special instructions

For your added safety, your vehicle is fitted with sophisticated electronic controls.

Please read the section *Supplemental restraint system (SRS)* in the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter. Failure to follow the specific warnings and instructions could result in personal injury.

Front seat mounted rear-facing child or infant seats should **NEVER** be placed in front of an active passenger air bag.

Notice to owners of diesel-powered vehicles

Read the *6.0 Liter Power Stroke Direct Injection Turbo Diesel Owner's Guide* Supplement for information regarding correct operation and maintenance of your Diesel-powered light truck.

Notice to owners of pickup trucks and utility type vehicles

Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.

Before you drive your vehicle, please read this *Owner's Guide* carefully. Your vehicle is not a passenger car. As with other vehicles of this type, failure to operate this vehicle correctly may result in loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury or death.
Be sure to read *Driving off road* in the *Driving* chapter.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Using your vehicle with a snowplow

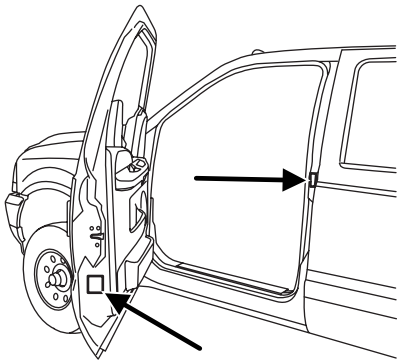
For more information and guidelines for using your vehicle with a snowplow, refer to the *Driving* chapter.

Using your vehicle as an ambulance

If your light truck is equipped with the Ford Ambulance Preparation Package, it may be utilized as an ambulance. Ford urges ambulance manufacturers to follow the recommendations of the *Ford Incomplete Vehicle Manual*, *Ford Truck Body Builder's Layout Book* and the *Qualified Vehicle Modifiers (QVM) Guidelines* as well as pertinent supplements. For additional information, please contact the Truck Body Builders Advisory Service at 1–877–840–4338.

Use of your Ford light truck as an ambulance, without the Ford Ambulance Preparation Package voids the Ford New Vehicle Limited Warranty and may void the Emissions Warranties. In addition, ambulance usage without the preparation package could cause high underbody temperatures, overpressurized fuel and a risk of spraying fuel which could lead to fires.

If your vehicle is equipped with the Ford Ambulance Preparation Package, it will be indicated on the Certification label. The label is located on the driver's side door pillar or on the rear edge of the driver's door. You can determine whether the ambulance manufacturer followed Ford's recommendations by directly contacting that manufacturer. Ford Ambulance Preparation Package is only available on certain 6.0L Diesel engine equipped vehicles.



DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Using your vehicle as a stationary power source (PTO)

Refer to the *Driving* chapter for more information and guidelines for operating a vehicle equipped with an aftermarket power take-off system.

Middle East/North Africa vehicle specific information

For your particular global region, your vehicle may be equipped with features and options that are different from the ones that are described in this *Owner's Guide;* therefore, a supplement has been supplied that complements this book. By referring to the pages in the provided supplement, you can properly identify those features, recommendations and specifications that are unique to your vehicle. **Refer to this Owner's Guide for all other required information and warnings.**

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

These are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.

Vehicle Symbol Glossary

Safety Alert		See Owner's Guide	
Fasten Safety Belt		Air Bag-Front	
Air Bag-Side		Child Seat	
Child Seat Installation Warning		Child Seat Lower Anchor	
Child Seat Tether Anchor		Brake System	
Anti-Lock Brake System		Brake Fluid - Non-Petroleum Based	
Powertrain Malfunction		Speed Control	
Master Lighting Switch		Hazard Warning Flasher	
Fog Lamps-Front		Fuse Compartment	
Fuel Pump Reset		Windshield Wash/Wipe	
Windshield Defrost/Demist		Rear Window Defrost/Demist	

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

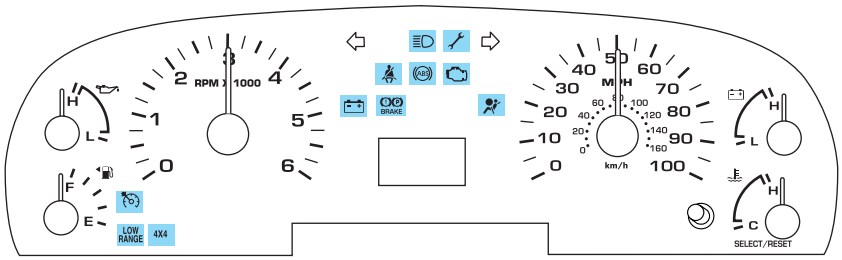
Vehicle Symbol Glossary

Power Windows Front/Rear		Power Window Lockout	
Child Safety Door Lock/Unlock		Interior Luggage Compartment Release Symbol	
Panic Alarm		Engine Oil	
Engine Coolant		Engine Coolant Temperature	
Do Not Open When Hot		Battery	
Avoid Smoking, Flames, or Sparks		Battery Acid	
Explosive Gas		Fan Warning	
Power Steering Fluid		Maintain Correct Fluid Level	
Emission System		Engine Air Filter	
Passenger Compartment Air Filter		Jack	
Check fuel cap		Low tire warning	

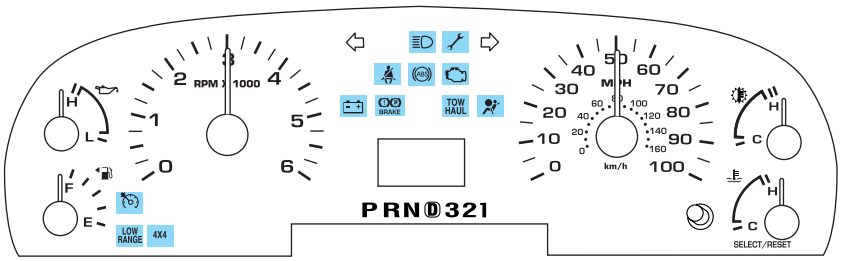
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

WARNING LIGHTS AND CHIMES

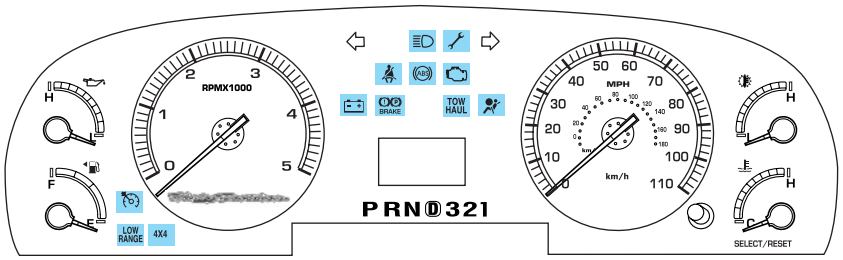
Standard instrument cluster (manual transmission)



Standard instrument cluster (automatic transmission)



Harley—Davidson instrument cluster



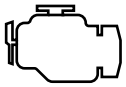
Warning lights and gauges can alert you to a vehicle condition that may become serious enough to cause expensive repairs. A warning light may illuminate when a problem exists with one of your vehicle's functions.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Many lights will illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure the bulbs work. If any light remains on after starting the vehicle, have the respective system inspected immediately.

If your vehicle is equipped with a Diesel engine, it has a unique cluster, refer to *Starting the engine in your 6.0 Liter Power Stroke Direct Injection Turbo Diesel Owner's Guide Supplement.*

Service engine soon: The *Service engine soon* indicator light illuminates when the ignition is first turned to the ON position to check the bulb. Solid illumination after the engine is started indicates the On Board Diagnostics System (OBD-II) has detected a malfunction. Refer to *On board diagnostics (OBD-II)* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter. If the light is blinking, engine misfire is occurring which could damage your catalytic converter. Drive in a moderate fashion (avoid heavy acceleration and deceleration) and have your vehicle serviced immediately.



Under engine misfire conditions, excessive exhaust temperatures could damage the catalytic converter, the fuel system, interior floor coverings or other vehicle components, possibly causing a fire.

Electronic throttle control: Illuminates when the engine has defaulted to a 'limp-home' operation. Report the fault to a dealer at the earliest opportunity.

On vehicles equipped with a message center, "ENGINE FAILSAFE MODE" will be displayed, refer to *Message Center* in the *Driver Controls* chapter.

Brake system warning light: To confirm the brake system warning light is functional, it will momentarily illuminate when the ignition is turned to the ON position when the engine is not running, or in a position between ON and START, or by applying the parking brake when the ignition is turned to the ON position. If the brake system warning light does not illuminate at this time, seek service immediately from your dealership. Illumination after releasing the parking brake indicates low brake fluid level and the brake system should be inspected immediately by your servicing dealership.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Instrument Cluster

Driving a vehicle with the brake system warning light on is dangerous. A significant decrease in braking performance may occur. It will take you longer to stop the vehicle. Have the vehicle checked by your dealer immediately.

Anti-lock brake system: If the ABS light stays illuminated or continues to flash, a malfunction has been detected, have the system serviced immediately. Normal braking is still functional unless the brake warning light also is illuminated.

Air bag readiness: If this light fails to illuminate when ignition is turned to ON, continues to flash or remains on, have the system serviced immediately. A chime will also sound when a malfunction in the supplemental restraint system has been detected.

Safety belt: Reminds you to fasten your safety belt. A chime will also sound to remind you to fasten your safety belt.

Charging system: Illuminates when the battery is not charging properly.

Transmission Tow/Haul Feature (automatic transmission): Illuminates when the Tow/Haul feature has been activated. Refer to the *Driving* chapter for transmission function and operation. If the light flashes steadily, have the system serviced immediately, damage to the transmission could occur.

TOW
HAUL

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Four wheel drive low: Illuminates when four-wheel drive low is engaged.

LOW RANGE

Four wheel drive indicator: Illuminates when four-wheel drive is engaged.

4x4

Speed control: Illuminates when the speed control is activated. Turns off when the speed control system is deactivated.

Turn signal: Illuminates when the left or right turn signal or the hazard lights are turned on. If the indicators stay on or flash faster, check for a burned out bulb.

High beams: Illuminates when the high beam headlamps are turned on.

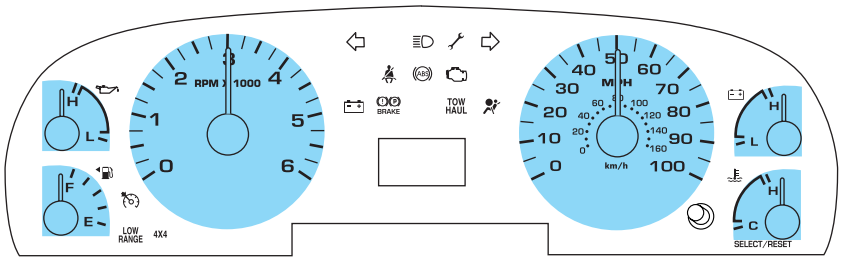
Key-in-ignition warning chime: Sounds when the key is left in the ignition in the OFF, LOCK or ACCESSORY position and the driver's door is opened.

Headlamps on warning chime: Sounds when the headlamps or parking lamps are on, the ignition is off (the key is not in the ignition) and the driver's door is opened.

Parking brake ON warning chime: Sounds when the parking brake is set, the engine is running and the vehicle is driven more than 3 mph (5 km).

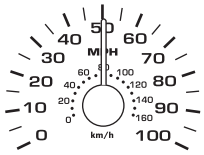
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

GAUGES

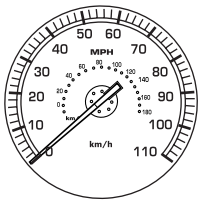


Speedometer: Indicates the current vehicle speed.

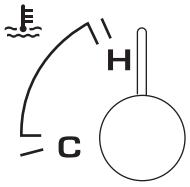
Standard instrument cluster



Harley—Davidson instrument cluster



Engine coolant temperature gauge: Indicates engine coolant temperature. At normal operating temperature, the needle will be in the normal range (between “H” and “C”). **If it enters the red section, the engine is overheating. Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible, switch off the engine and let the engine cool.**

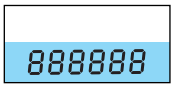


Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

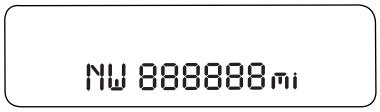
Odometer: Registers the total miles (kilometers) of the vehicle.

- With Mini Message Center



- With Full Message Center

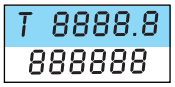
Refer to Message Center in the Drivers Controls chapter on how to switch the display from Metric to English.



Trip odometer: Registers the miles (kilometers) of individual journeys.

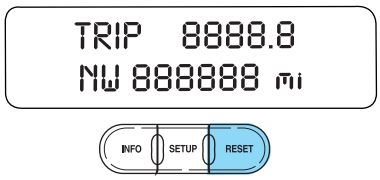
- With Mini Message Center

Press and release the SELECT/RESET button on the cluster to toggle between odometer and trip odometer display. To reset, press and hold for less than 2 seconds.



- With Full Message Center

Press and release the message center INFO button until TRIP mode appears in the display. Press the RESET button to reset.



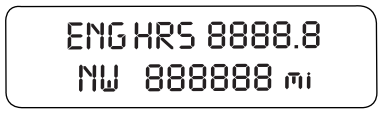
Engine hour meter: Registers the accumulated time the engine has been running.

- With Mini Message Center

Press the SELECT/RESET button until the engine hours display.

- With Full Message Center

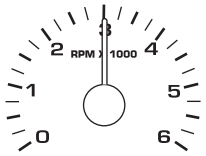
Press and release the message center INFO button until ENG HRS XXXX.X appears in the display. Press the RESET button to reset.



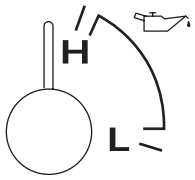
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Instrument Cluster

Tachometer: Indicates the engine speed in revolutions per minute. Driving with your tachometer pointer continuously at the top of the scale may damage the engine.

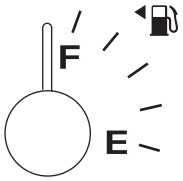


Engine oil pressure gauge: Indicates engine oil pressure. The needle should stay in the normal operating range (between "L" and "H"). If the needle falls below the normal range, stop the vehicle, turn off the engine and check the engine oil level. Add oil if needed. If the oil level is correct, have your vehicle checked at your dealership or by a qualified technician.

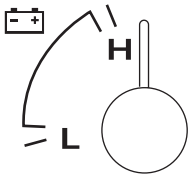


Fuel gauge: Indicates approximately how much fuel is left in the fuel tank (when the ignition is in the ON position). The fuel gauge may vary slightly when the vehicle is in motion or on a grade.

Refer to *Filling the tank* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter for more information.



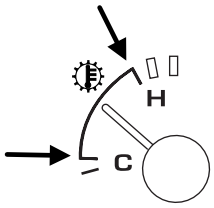
Battery voltage gauge (manual transmission only): Indicates the battery voltage when the ignition is in the ON position. If the pointer moves and stays outside the normal operating range (as indicated by arrows), have the vehicle's electrical system checked as soon as possible.



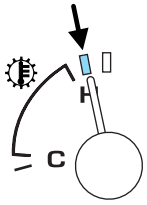
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Transmission fluid temperature gauge (automatic transmission only): If the gauge is in the:

Normal area (normal) - the transmission fluid is within the normal operating temperature (between “H” and “C”).

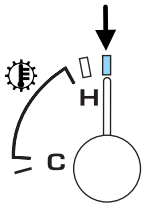


Yellow area (warning) — the transmission fluid is higher than normal operating temperature. This can be caused by special operation conditions (i.e. snowplowing, towing or off road use). Refer to *Special Operating Conditions* in the *Scheduled Maintenance Guide* for instructions. Operating the transmission for extended periods of time with the gauge in the yellow area may cause internal transmission damage.



Altering the severity of the driving conditions is recommended to lower the transmission temperature into the normal range.

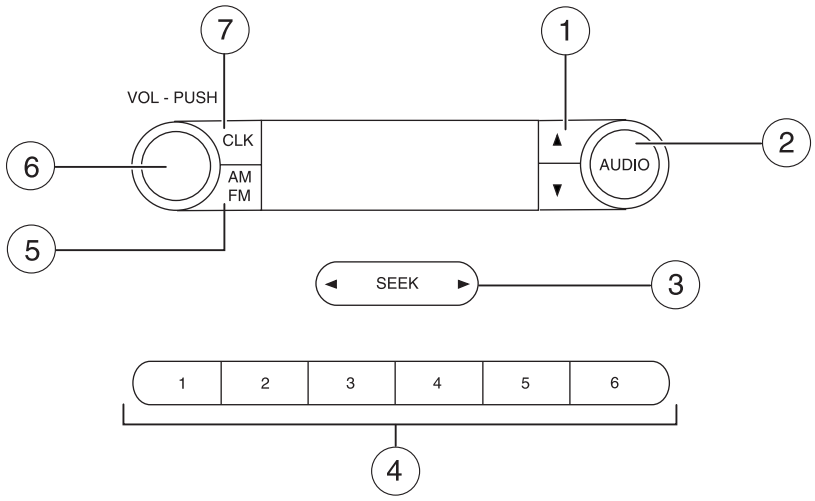
Red area (over temperature) — the transmission fluid is overheating. Stop the vehicle to allow the temperature to return to normal range.



If the gauge is operating in the Yellow or Red area, stop the vehicle and verify the airflow is not restricted such as snow or debris blocking airflow through the grill. If the gauge continues to show high temperatures, see your Ford dealer.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

AM/FM STEREO SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)



1. ▲ / ▼ **Tuner:** Press to manually go up or down the radio frequency. Also use in menu mode to select various settings.

2. **Audio:** Press to access select various settings.

Treble: Press to adjust the treble setting. Use ▲ /▼ /◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ .

Bass: Press to adjust the bass setting. Use ▲ /▼ /◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ .

Balance: Press to adjust the audio between the left and right speakers. Use ▲ /▼ /◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ .

Fade: Press to adjust the audio between the front and rear speakers. Use ▲ /▼ /◀ SEEK, SEEK ▶ .

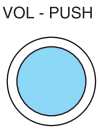
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

3. **Seek:** Press to access the next/previous strong station or track.

4. **Memory presets:** To set a station: Select frequency band AM/FM; tune to a station, press and hold a preset button until sound returns.

5. **AM/FM:** Press to select AM/FM frequency band.

6. **ON/OFF/Volume:** Press to turn ON/OFF. Turn to increase/decrease volume.
If the volume is set above a certain level and the ignition is turned off, the volume will come back on at a "nominal" listening level when the ignition switch is turned back on.

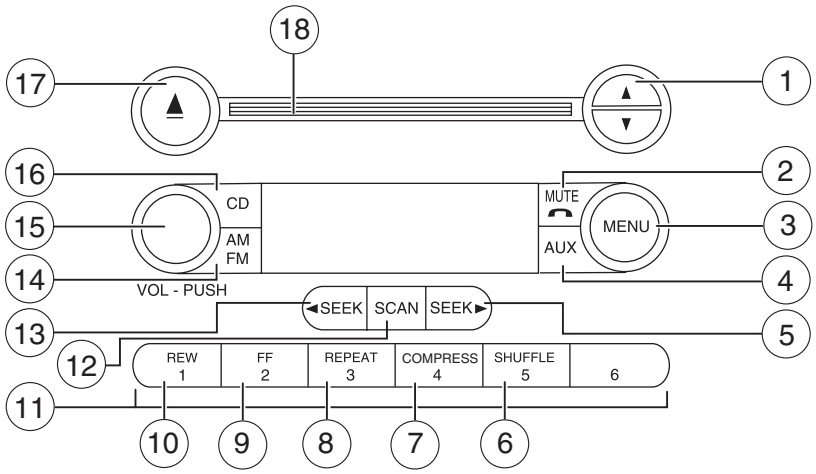


7. **CLK (Clock):** Press to toggle between the clock and radio display. To set the clock: Press and hold CLK until the hours begin to flash. Press ▼ /▲ to manually decrease / increase the hours. Press CLK again to set the minutes.

When this audio is used in cargo vans where no rear speakers are installed in the vehicle, fading to the rear speakers will result in no audio output.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

AM/FM STEREO/ SINGLE CD SOUND SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)



1. ▲ / ▼ **Tuner:** Press to manually go up or down the radio frequency. Also use in menu mode to select various settings.

2. **Phone/mute:** Press to mute the playing media. Press again to return to the playing media.

3. **Menu:** Press to toggle through the following modes:

Autoset: Allows you to set the strongest local radio stations without losing your original manually set preset stations for AM/FM1/FM2 . Press MENU to access. Use ▲ /▼ /◀ SEEK▶ to set.

When the six strongest stations are filled, the station stored in preset 1 will begin playing. If there are less than six strong stations, the system will store the last one in the remaining presets.

Bass: Press to adjust the bass setting. Use ▲ /▼ /◀ SEEK▶ .

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Treble: Press to adjust the treble setting. Use ▲ /▼ /◀ SEEK▶ .

Balance: Press to adjust the audio between the left and right speakers. Use ▲ /▼ /◀ SEEK▶ .

Fade: Press to adjust the audio between the front and rear speakers. Use ▲ /▼ /◀ SEEK▶ .

Speed sensitive volume (if equipped): Radio volume automatically changes slightly with vehicle speed to compensate for road and wind noise. Press MENU to access and use ▲ /▼ /◀ SEEK ▶ to adjust.

Setting the clock: Press MENU until SELECT HOUR or SELECT MINUTE is displayed. Use ▲ /▼ to manually increase/decrease Press MENU again to disengage clock mode.

4. **Aux:** Press to toggle between FES/DVD and AUX modes. If no auxiliary sources are available, NO AUX AUDIO will be displayed.

5. **Seek:** Press to access the next strong station or track.

6. **Shuffle:** Press to play tracks in random order.

7. **Comp (Compression):** In CD mode, brings soft and loud CD passages together for a more consistent listening level.

8. **Repeat:** Press to repeat the current CD track.

9. **Fast forward:** Press to manually advance in a CD track.

10. **Rewind:** Press to manually reverse in a CD track.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

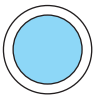
11. **Memory presets:** To set a station: Select frequency band AM/FM; tune to a station, press and hold a preset button until sound returns.

12. **Scan:** Press for a brief sampling of radio stations or CD tracks. Press again to stop.

13. **Seek:** Press to access the previous strong station or track.

14. **AM/FM:** Press to select AM/FM frequency band.

15. **ON/OFF/Volume:** Press to turn ON/OFF. Turn to increase/decrease volume.
If the volume is set above a certain level and the ignition is turned off, the volume will come back on at a "nominal" listening level when the ignition switch is turned back on.



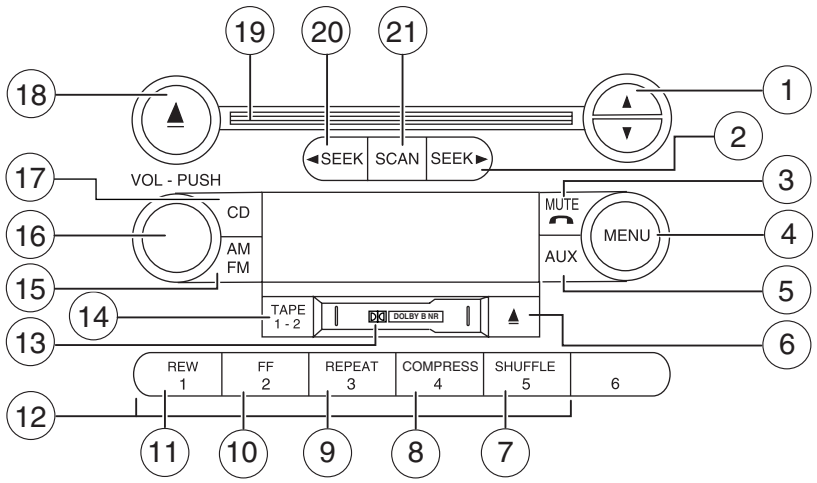
16. **CD:** Press to enter CD mode. If a CD is already loaded into the system, CD play will begin where it ended last.

17. **CD eject:** Press to eject a CD.

18. **CD slot:** Insert a CD label side up.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

AM/FM STEREO CASSETTE/SINGLE CD SOUND SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)



1. ▲ / ▼ **Tuner:** Press to manually go up or down the radio frequency. Also use in menu mode to select various settings.

2. **Seek:** Press to access the next strong station or track.

3. **Phone/mute:** Press to mute the playing media. Press again to return to the playing media.

4. **Menu:** Press to toggle through the following modes:

Treble: Press to adjust the treble setting. Use ▲ /▼ /◀ SEEK▶ .

Bass: Press to adjust the bass setting. Use ▲ /▼ /◀ SEEK▶ .

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Balance: Press to adjust the audio between the left and right speakers. Use ▲ /▼ /◀ SEEK ▶ .

Fade: Press to adjust the audio between the front and rear speakers. Use ▲ /▼ /◀ SEEK▶ .

Speed sensitive volume (if equipped): Radio volume automatically changes slightly with vehicle speed to compensate for road and wind noise. Press MENU to access and use ▲ /▼ /◀ SEEK▶ to adjust.

Setting the clock: Press MENU until SELECT HOUR or SELECT MINUTE is displayed. Press ▲ /▼ /◀ SEEK▶ to adjust the hours/minutes.

Autoset: Allows you to set the strongest local radio stations without losing your original manually set preset stations for AM/FM1/FM2 . Press MENU to access. Use ▲ /▼ /◀ SEEK ▶ to set.

When the six strongest stations are filled, the station stored in preset 1 will begin playing. If there are less than six strong stations, the system will store the last one in the remaining presets.

Dolby noise reduction: In tape mode, this feature reduces tape noise and hiss. Press ▲ /▼ /◀ SEEK▶ to cycle ON/OFF. The Dolby noise reduction system is manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation. Dolby and double-D are registered trademarks of Dolby Laboratories Licensing Corporation.

5. **AUX:** Press to toggle between FES/DVD and AUX modes. If no auxiliary sources are available, NO AUX AUDIO will be displayed. To return to radio mode, press AM/FM.

6. **Tape eject:** Press to eject a tape.

7. **Shuffle:** Press to play CD tracks in random order.

8. **Compress (Compression):** In CD mode, brings soft and loud CD passages together for a more consistent listening level.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

9. **Repeat:** Press to repeat the current CD track.

10. **Fast forward:** Press to manually advance in a CD track or cassette.

11. **Rewind:** Press to manually reverse in a CD track or cassette.

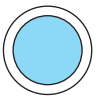
12. **Memory presets:** To set a station: Select frequency band AM/FM; tune to a station, press and hold a preset button until sound returns.

13. **Tape:** Insert a tape facing to the right.

14. **Tape direction:** Press to enter tape mode. Press while in play mode to change which side of the tape is playing.

15. **AM/FM:** Press to select AM/FM frequency band.

16. **ON/OFF/Volume:** Press to turn ON/OFF. Turn to increase/decrease volume.
If the volume is set above a certain level and the ignition is turned off, the volume will come back on at a "nominal" listening level when the ignition switch is turned back on.



17. **CD:** Press to enter CD mode. If a CD is already loaded into the system, CD play will begin where it ended last.

18. **CD eject:** Press to eject a CD.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

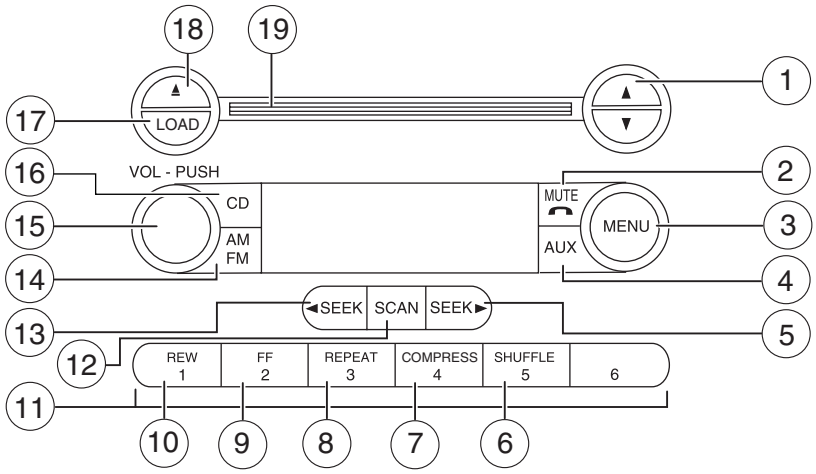
19. **CD slot:** Insert a CD label side up.

20. **Seek:**Press to access the previous strong station or track.

21. **Scan:** Press for a brief sampling of radio stations or CD tracks. Press again to stop.

When this radio is used in cargo vans where no rear speakers are installed in the vehicle, fading to the rear speakers will result in no audio output.

PREMIUM IN-DASH SIX CD SOUND SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)



1. ▲ / ▼ **Tuner:** Press to manually go up or down the radio frequency. Also use in menu mode to select various settings.

2. **Phone/mute:** Press to mute the playing media. Press again to return to the playing media.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

3. **Menu:** Press to toggle through the following modes:

Autoset: Allows you to set the strongest local radio stations without losing your original manually set preset stations for AM/FM1/FM2 . Press MENU to access. Use ▲ /▼ /◀ SEEK ▶ to set.

When the six strongest stations are filled, the station stored in preset 1 will begin playing. If there are less than six strong stations, the system will store the last one in the remaining presets.

Bass: Press to adjust the bass setting. Use ▲ /▼ /◀ SEEK▶ .

Treble: Press to adjust the treble setting. Use ▲ /▼ /◀ SEEK▶ .

Balance: Press to adjust the audio between the left and right speakers. Use ▲ /▼ /◀ SEEK▶ .

Fade: Press to adjust the audio between the front and rear speakers. Use ▲ /▼ /◀ SEEK▶ .

Speed sensitive volume (if equipped): Radio volume automatically changes slightly with vehicle speed to compensate for road and wind noise. Press MENU to access and use ▲ /▼ /◀ SEEK ▶ to adjust.

Setting the clock: Press MENU until SELECT HOUR or SELECT MINUTE is displayed. Press ▲ /▼ /◀ SEEK ▶ to adjust the hours/minutes.

4. **Aux:** Press to toggle between FES/DVD and AUX modes. If no auxiliary sources are available, NO AUX AUDIO will be displayed.

5. **Seek:** Press to access the next strong station or track.

6. **Shuffle:** Press to play tracks in random order.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

7. **Comp (Compression):** In CD mode, brings soft and loud CD passages together for a more consistent listening level.

8. **Repeat:** Press to repeat the current CD track.

9. **Fast forward:** Press to manually advance in a CD track.

10. **Rewind:** Press to manually reverse in a CD track.

11. **Memory presets:** To set a station: Select frequency band AM/FM; tune to a station, press and hold a preset button until sound returns.

12. **Scan:** Press for a brief sampling of radio stations or CD tracks. Press again to stop.

13. **Seek:** Press to access the previous strong station or track.

14. **AM/FM:** Press to select AM/FM frequency band.

15. **ON/OFF/Volume:** Press to turn ON/OFF. Turn to increase/decrease volume.
If the volume is set above a certain level and the ignition is turned off, the volume will come back on at a "nominal" listening level when the ignition switch is turned back on.

16. **CD:** Press to enter CD mode. If a CD is already loaded into the system, CD play will begin where it ended last.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

17. **LOAD:** Press to load a CD, then select a slot number using the radio presets 1 through 6. If you don't select a slot within 5 seconds, the radio shall choose the first available slot for you. Press and hold for 2 seconds to auto load up to six CDs.

18. **CD eject:** Press to eject a CD, then select the desired CD slot using the radio presets 1 through 6. If a slot is not selected within 5 seconds, the radio shall eject the current disc. Press and hold for 2 seconds to auto eject all CDs present in the radio mechanism.

19. **CD slot:** Insert a CD label side up.

RADIO FREQUENCIES

AM and FM frequencies are established by the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and the Canadian Radio and Telecommunications Commission (CRTC). Those frequencies are:

AM - 530, 540–1700, 1710 kHz

FM- 87.7, 87.9–107.7, 107.9 MHz

RADIO RECEPTION FACTORS

There are three factors that can affect radio reception:

- Distance/strength: The further you travel from an FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.
- Terrain: Hills, mountains, tall buildings, power lines, electric fences, traffic lights and thunderstorms can interfere with your reception.
- Station overload: When you pass a broadcast tower, a stronger signal may overtake a weaker one and play while the weak station frequency is displayed.

CASSETTE/PLAYER CARE

Do:

- Use only cassettes that are 90 minutes long or less.
- Tighten very loose tapes by inserting a finger or pencil into the hole and turning the hub.
- Remove loose labels before inserting tapes.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

- Allow tapes which have been subjected to extreme heat, humidity or cold to reach a moderate temperature before playing.
- Clean the cassette player head with a cassette cleaning cartridge after 10–12 hours of play to maintain good sound/operation.

Don't:

- Expose tapes to direct sunlight, extreme humidity, heat or cold.
- Leave tapes in the cassette player for a long time when not being played.

CD/CD PLAYER CARE

Do:

- Handle discs by their edges only. Never touch the playing surface.
- Inspect discs before playing. Clean only with an approved CD cleaner and wipe from the center out.

Don't:

- Expose discs to direct sunlight or heat sources for extended periods of time.
- Insert more than one disc into each slot of the CD changer magazine.
- Clean using a circular motion.

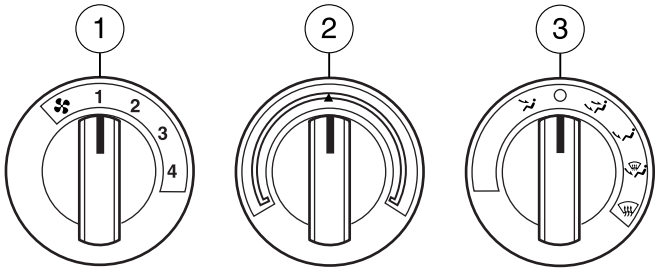
CD units are designed to play commercially pressed 4.75 in (12 cm) audio compact discs only. Due to technical incompatibility, certain recordable and re-recordable compact discs may not function correctly when used in Ford CD players. Irregular shaped CDs, CDs with a scratch protection film attached, and CDs with homemade paper (adhesive) labels should not be inserted into the CD player. The label may peel and cause the CD to become jammed. It is recommended that homemade CDs be identified with permanent felt tip marker rather than adhesive labels. Ball point pens may damage CDs. Please contact your dealer for further information.

AUDIO SYSTEM WARRANTY AND SERVICE

Refer to the *Warranty Guide* for audio system warranty information. If service is necessary, see your dealer or qualified technician.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

HEATER ONLY SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)



1. **Fan speed adjustment:** Controls the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.

2. **Temperature selection:** Controls the temperature of the airflow in the vehicle.

3. **Air flow selections:** Controls the direction of the airflow in the vehicle. See the following for a brief description on each control:

: Distributes outside air through the instrument panel vents.

: Distributes outside air through the instrument panel vents and the floor vents.

O (OFF): Outside air is shut out and the fan will not operate.

: Distributes outside air through the floor vents.

: Distributes outside air through the windshield defroster vents, floor vents and demister vents.

: Distributes outside air through the windshield defroster vents and demister vents. Can be used to clear windshield of fog and thin ice.

Operating tips

- To reduce fog build up on the windshield during humid weather, place the air flow selector in the position.
- To reduce humidity build up inside the vehicle during cold or warm weather, do not drive with the air flow selector in the O (OFF) position.
- Do not put objects under the front seats that will interfere with the air flow to the rear seats.
- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

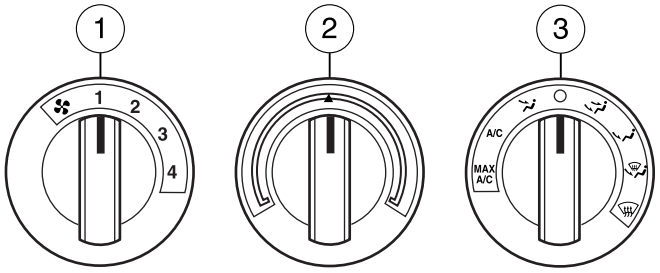
To aid in side window defogging/demisting in cold weather:

1. Select .
2. Adjust the temperature control to maintain comfort.
3. Set the fan speed to the highest setting.
4. Direct the outer instrument panel vents toward the side windows.

To increase airflow to the outer instrument panel vents, close the vents located in the middle of the instrument panel.

Do not place objects on top of the instrument panel as these objects may become projectiles in a collision or sudden stop.

MANUAL HEATING AND AIR CONDITIONING SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)



1. **Fan speed adjustment:** Controls the volume of air circulated in the vehicle.

2. **Temperature selection:** Controls the temperature of the airflow in the vehicle.

3. **Air flow selections:** Controls the direction of the airflow in the vehicle. See the following for a brief description on each control.

MAX A/C: Distributes recirculated air through the instrument panel vents and center console vents (if equipped) to cool the vehicle. This re-cooling of the interior air is more economical and efficient. Recirculated air may also help reduce undesirable odors from entering the vehicle. The temperature selection control will not adjust airflow temperature when in MAX A/C mode.

: Distributes outside air through the instrument panel vents and center console vents (if equipped).

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

: Distributes outside air through the instrument panel vents, floor vents and center console vents (if equipped).

O (OFF): Outside air is shut out and the climate system is turned off.

: Distributes outside air through the floor vents.

: Distributes outside air through the windshield defroster vents, floor vents and demister vents.

: Distributes outside air through the windshield defroster vents and demister vents.

Operating tips

- To reduce fog build up on the windshield during humid weather, place the air flow selector in the position.
- To reduce humidity build up inside the vehicle, do not drive with the air flow selector in the O (OFF) position.
- Do not put objects under the front seats that will interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.
- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.
- To improve the A/C cool down, drive with the windows slightly open for 2–3 minutes after start up or until the vehicle has been “aired out.”

For maximum cooling performance (MAX A/C) in MAX A/C mode:

- Move the temperature control to the coolest setting.
- Set the fan to the highest speed initially, then adjust in order to maintain comfort.

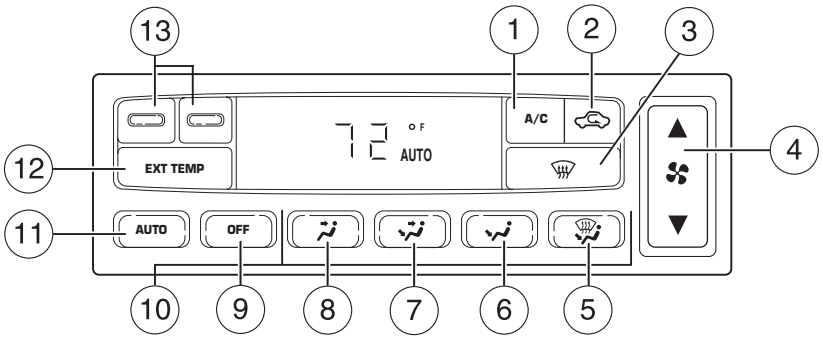
To aid in side window defogging and demisting in cold weather:

1. Select .
2. Select A/C.
3. Set the temperature control to maintain comfort.
4. Set the fan speed to highest setting.
5. Direct the outer instrument panel vents towards the side windows.

Do not place objects on top of the instrument panel as these objects may become projectiles in a collision or sudden stop.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

AUTOMATIC TEMPERATURE CONTROL SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)



Press the AUTO and (floor/defrost) controls at the same time and hold for one second to switch between Fahrenheit and Celsius.

1. **A/C:** Press to activate/deactivate air conditioning. Use with recirculated air to improve cooling performance and efficiency. Engages automatically in AUTO, (defrost), and (floor/defrost).

2. **Recirculated air:** Press to activate/deactivate air recirculation in cabin. Recirculated air may reduce the amount of time to cool down the interior of the vehicle and may also help reduce undesired odors from reaching the interior of the vehicle. Recirculation can be engaged manually in any other airflow selection except (defrost). Recirculation may turn off automatically in all airflow selections.

3. **Defrost:** Distributes outside air through the windshield defroster vents and demister vents. Can be used to clear windshield of fog and thin ice.

4. **Fan speed:** Press the respective control in order to manually increase or decrease the fan speed. To return to automatic fan operation, press AUTO.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

5. (Floor/defrost): Distributes air through the instrument panel vents, floor vents and demister vents.

6. (Floor): Distributes air through the floor vents.

7. (Panel/floor): Distributes air through the instrument panel vents, floor vents and center console vents (if equipped).

8. (Panel): Distributes air through the instrument panel vents and center console vents (if equipped).

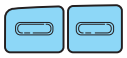
9. **OFF:** Outside air is shut out and the climate control system is turned off.

10. **Manual override controls:** The manual override controls allow you to change the system operation. To return to full automatic control, press AUTO. Refer to controls 5–8 for a brief description of each mode.

11. **AUTO:** Press to engage full automatic operation, and select the desired temperature using the temperature control. The system will automatically determine fan speed, airflow location, A/C on or off, and outside or recirculated air, to heat or cool the vehicle to reach the desired temperature.

12. **EXT Control (if equipped):** Press **EXT TEMP** to display outside temperature. Press again to display cabin temperature settings.

13. **Temperature controls:** Press to increase or decrease the temperature in the vehicle cabin. **Note:** The recommended vehicle cabin setting is between 72°F (22°C) and 75°F (24°C).



Operating tips

- To reduce fog build up on the windshield during humid weather, place the air flow selector in the position.
- To reduce humidity build up inside the vehicle, do not drive with the air flow selector in the OFF or with recirculated air engaged.
- Do not put objects under the front seats that will interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

- Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.
- To improve the A/C cool down, drive with the windows slightly open for 2–3 minutes after start up or until the vehicle has been “aired out.”

For maximum cooling performance in AUTO mode:

- Press AUTO control and set to desired temperature.

For maximum cooling performance using manual override modes:

- Press (panel), A/C, with recirculated air. Set the temperature to 60°F (16°C) and the fan to the highest setting.

To aid in side window defogging and demisting in cold weather:

1. Select .
2. Select A/C.
3. Set the temperature control to maintain comfort.
4. Set the fan speed to highest setting.
5. Direct the outer instrument panel vents towards the side windows. To increase airflow to the outer instrument panel vents, close the vents located in the middle of the instrument panel.

To increase airflow to the outer instrument panel vents, close the vents located in the middle of the instrument panel.

Do not place objects on top of the instrument panel as these objects may become projectiles in a collision or sudden stop.

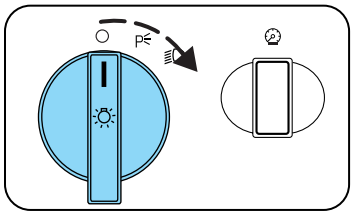
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

HEADLAMP CONTROL

Turns the lamps off.

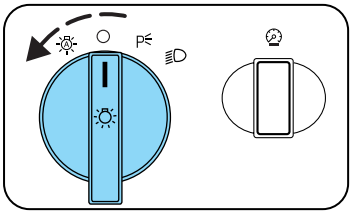
Turns on the parking lamps, instrument panel lamps, license plate lamps and tail lamps.

Turns the headlamps on.



Autolamp control (if equipped)

The autolamp system provides light sensitive automatic on-off control of the exterior lights normally controlled by the headlamp control.



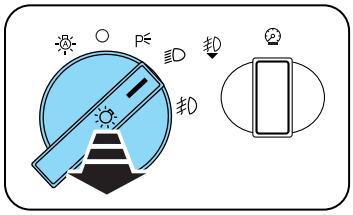
The autolamp system also keeps the lights on for approximately 20 seconds after the ignition switch is turned to OFF.

To change the delay time of the autolamp feature, do the following:

1. Start with the ignition in OFF and the autolamps selected.
2. Deselect the autolamps.
3. Put the ignition in RUN.
4. Put the ignition in OFF.
5. Select the autolamps. Steps 2 through 5 must be performed within a 10 second period. At this point, the headlamps and parking lamps will turn on.
6. Deselect the autolamps after the desired autolamp delay time (maximum of 3 minutes). At this point, the headlamps and parking lamps will turn off.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Foglamp control (if equipped)



The headlamp control also operates the foglamps. The foglamps can be turned on only when the headlamp control is in the , or position and the high beams are not turned on.

In autolamp mode, the foglamps won't be operational until lighting conditions warrant the activation of the headlamp/parklamp lighting.

Pull headlamp control towards you to turn foglamps on. The foglamp indicator light will illuminate when the switch is pulled and the parklamps are on.

Daytime running lamps (DRL) (if equipped)

Turns the headlamps on with a reduced output.

To activate:

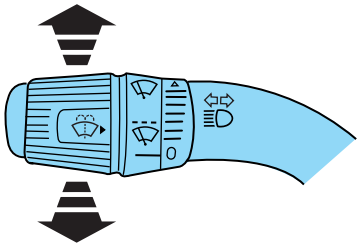
- the ignition must be in the ON position,
- the headlamp control is in the OFF or parking lamp position and
- the parking brake must be disengaged.

Always remember to turn on your headlamps at dusk or during inclement weather. The Daytime Running Lamp (DRL) system does not activate the tail lamps and generally may not provide adequate lighting during these conditions. Failure to activate your headlamps under these conditions may result in a collision.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

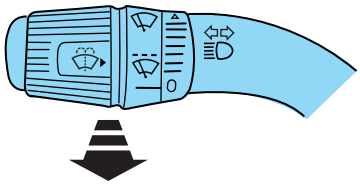
High beams

Push the lever toward the instrument panel to activate. Pull the lever towards you to deactivate.



Flash to pass

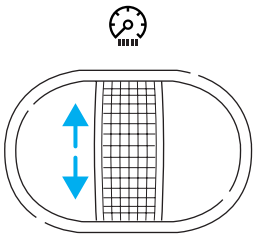
Pull toward you slightly to activate and release to deactivate.



PANEL DIMMER CONTROL

Use to adjust the brightness of the instrument panel and all applicable switches in the vehicle during headlamp and parklamp operation.

Move the control to the full upright position, past detent, to turn on the interior lamps.



AIMING THE HEADLAMPS

Your vehicle may be equipped with a sealed beam or aerodynamic headlamp system. Sealed beam headlamps may be aimed in the vertical (up/down) and the horizontal (left/right) directions using the procedures following. The aerodynamic headlamps can only be aimed in the vertical direction (up/down) using the procedures following. The headlamps on your vehicle are properly aimed at the assembly plant and should not normally need adjusting.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

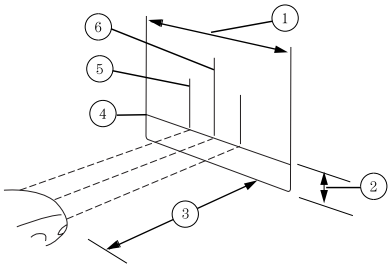
Vertical and horizontal aim adjustment (sealed beam headlamps)

The headlamps on your vehicle are intended to be aimed using mechanical aimers. If mechanical aimers are used and the cross-car sight line is in any way blocked, set the legs of the universal adaptor all to the same setting, such that the cross-car sight line is no longer blocked, per the instructions for the brand of mechanical aimer used. You can also aim the headlamps visually using the procedure below.

To adjust the headlamps:

1. Park your vehicle on a level surface about 25 feet (7.6 meters) away from a vertical plain surface (3). Check your headlamp alignment at night or in a dark area so that you can see the headlamp beam pattern.

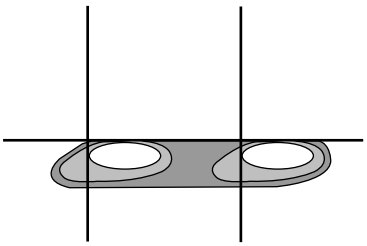
- (1) 8 feet (2.4 meters)
- (2) Center height of lamp to ground
- (3) 25 feet (7.6 meters)
- (4) Horizontal reference line
- (5) Center of headlamps
- (6) Center line of the vehicle



2. The center of the headlamp is marked either on the lens (a circle or cross marker) or on the bulb shield, internal to the lamp (mark or feature). Measure the height from the center of your headlamp to the ground (2) and mark an 8 foot (2.4 meter) long horizontal line on the wall or screen (1) at this height (masking tape works well).

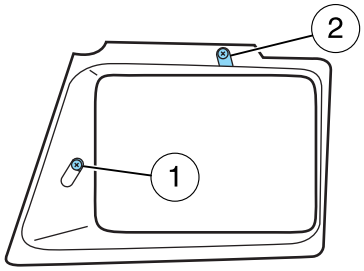
3. Turn on the low beam headlamps and open the hood.

4. Locate the high intensity area of the beam pattern and place the top edge of the intensity zone even with the horizontal reference line (4). If the top edge of the high intensity area is not even with the horizontal line, follow the next step to adjust it.



DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

5. Locate the vertical adjuster (2) for each headlamp. Adjust the aim by turning the adjuster control either clockwise (to adjust up) or counterclockwise (to adjust down).



6. In addition to the horizontal line marked in step 2, a pair of vertical lines (5) must be marked at the center line of the headlamps on the wall or screen.

7. On the wall or screen, locate the high intensity area of the beam pattern. The left edge of the high intensity area should be even with the vertical line corresponding to the headlamp under adjustment. If the left edge of the high intensity area is not even with the vertical line, follow the next step to adjust it.

8. Locate the horizontal adjuster (1) for each headlamp. Turn it clockwise or counterclockwise, to place the left edge of the high intensity area even with the vertical line corresponding to the headlamp under adjustment.

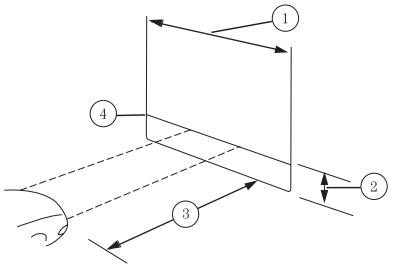
Vertical aim adjustment (aerodynamic headlamps)

The headlamps on your vehicle can only be vertically adjusted. Your vehicle does not require horizontal aim adjustments.

To adjust the headlamps:

1. Park the vehicle directly in front of a wall or screen on a level surface, approximately 25 feet (7.6 meters) away.

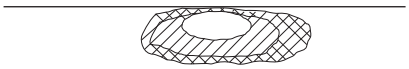
- (1) 8 feet (2.4 meters)
- (2) Center height of lamp to ground
- (3) 25 feet (7.6 meters)
- (4) Horizontal reference line



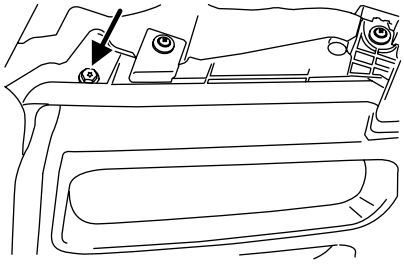
2. Measure the height from the center of your headlamp (indicated by a 3.0 mm circle on the lens) to the ground and mark an 8 foot (2.4 meter) horizontal reference line on the vertical wall or screen at this height (a piece of masking tape works well).

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

3. Turn on the low beam headlamps to illuminate the wall or screen and open the hood. Cover one of the headlamps so no light hits the wall.



4. On the wall or screen you will observe a light pattern with a distinct horizontal edge towards the right. If this edge is not at the horizontal reference line, the beam will need to be adjusted so the edge is at the same height as the horizontal reference line.



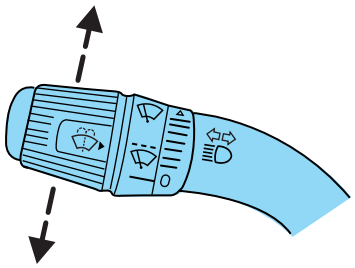
5. Locate the vertical adjuster on each headlamp, then use a E5 Torx socket to turn the adjuster either counterclockwise (to adjust down) or clockwise (to adjust up) aligning the upper edge of the light pattern up to the horizontal line.

6. Repeat step 3–5 for the other headlamp.

7. Close the hood and turn off the lamps.

TURN SIGNAL CONTROL ⇦⇨

- Push down to activate the left turn signal.
- Push up to activate the right turn signal.

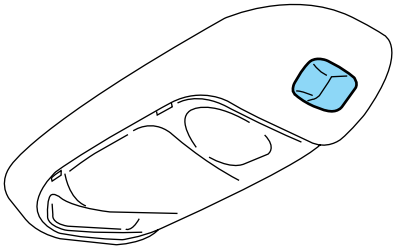


DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

COURTESY/READING LAMPS (IF EQUIPPED)

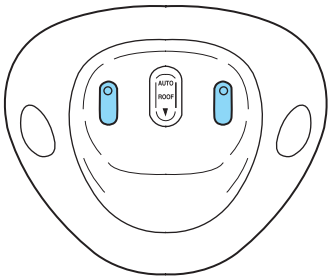
The dome lamp lights when any door is not completely closed, the instrument panel switch is pushed past the detent and when any of the remote entry controls are pressed while the ignition is off.

The reading lamps can be turned on by pressing the rocker controls next to each lamp.



MAP LAMPS (IF EQUIPPED)

To turn on the map lamps, press the control next to each lamp.



BULBS

Headlamp Condensation

The headlamps are vented to equalize pressure. When moist air enters the headlamp(s) through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur. This condensation is normal and will clear within 45 minutes of headlamp operation.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Replacing exterior bulbs

Check the operation of all the bulbs frequently.

Function	Number of bulbs	Trade number
Headlamps (aerodynamic)	2	H13/9008
Headlamps (sealed beam)	2	H6054
Park lamp with aerodynamic headlamp	2	3157AK or 3157A
Park lamp with sealed beam headlamp	2	4157K/3157
Sidemarker	2	194
Tail/stop/turn/sidemarker	2	4157K/3157
Backup	2	3156K or 3156
High-mount stoplamp	1	922
Foglamp	2	9145
License plate lamp	2	194
Cargo lamp	2	906
Roofmarker	5	194
Rear fender clearance*	4	W5W
Interior visor lamp (if equipped)	4	194
Rear identification	3	194
All replacement bulbs are clear in color except where noted.		
To replace all instrument panel lights - see your dealer		
* Dual rear wheels, or if equipped.		

Replacing headlamp bulbs (aerodynamic)

1. Make sure that the headlamp control is in the OFF position and open the hood.

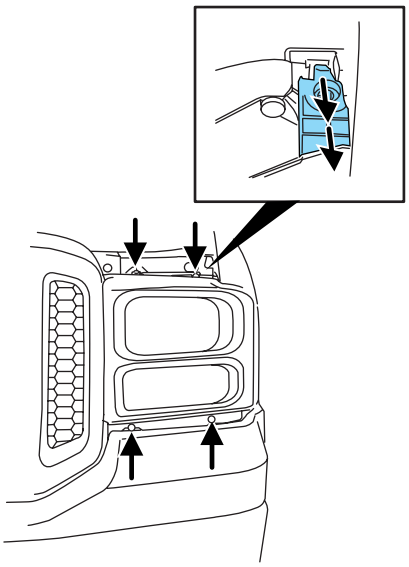
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

2. Remove the four screws from the top and bottom front of the headlamp assembly.

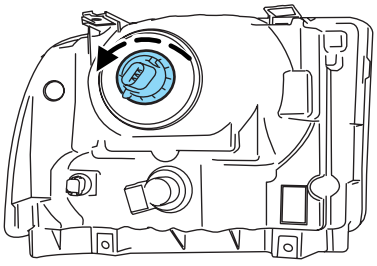
3. Press the retaining clip at the top of the headlamp assembly while pulling the assembly straight out.

If removing the lamp is difficult, removing the four screws along the top of the grill will help provide more clearance.

4. Disconnect the electrical connector by squeezing the release tab and pushing the connector forward and then pulling it reward.



5. Remove the bulb assembly by turning it counterclockwise and pulling it straight out.



Handle a halogen headlamp bulb carefully and keep out of children's reach. Grasp the bulb only by its plastic base and do not touch the glass. The oil from your hand could cause the bulb to break the next time the headlamps are operated.

Install the new bulb(s) in reverse order.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

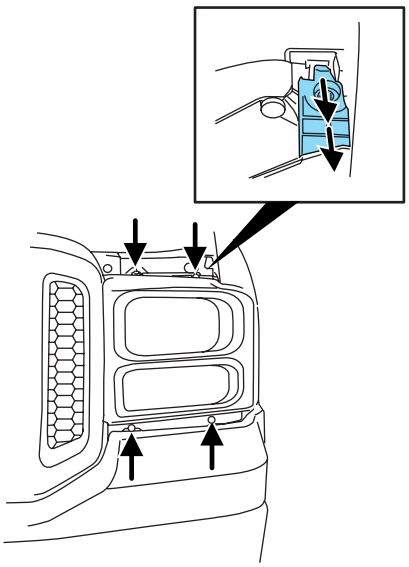
Replacing park/turn and sidemarker lamp bulbs (aerodynamic)

1. Make sure that the headlamp control is in the OFF position and open the hood.

2. Remove the four screws from the top and bottom front of the headlamp assembly.

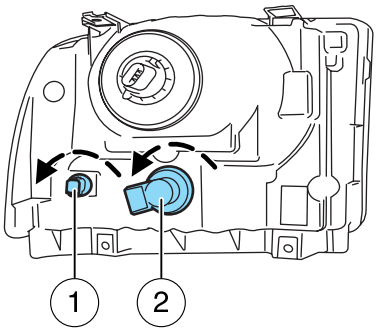
3. Press the retaining clip at the top of the headlamp assembly while pulling the assembly straight out.

   If removing the lamp is difficult, removing the four screws along the top of the grill will help provide more clearance.



4. Remove the bulb assembly, (1) sidemarker or (2) park/turn by turning it counterclockwise and pulling it straight out.

5. Pull the old bulb out from the socket.



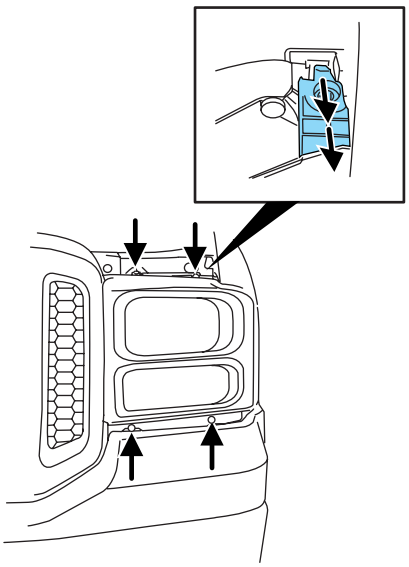
Install the new bulb(s) in reverse order.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Replacing headlamp bulbs (sealed beam)

1. Make sure that the headlamp control is in the OFF position and open the hood.
2. Remove the four screws from the top and bottom front of the headlamp assembly.
3. Press the retaining clip at the top of the headlamp assembly while pulling the assembly straight out.

   If removing the lamp is difficult, removing the four screws along the top of the grill will help provide more clearance.
4. Disconnect the electrical connector from the park lamp/bezel.
5. Remove the four screws and the headlamp retaining ring from headlamp.



Install the new bulb(s) in reverse order.

Replacing park/turn/sidemarker bulbs (sealed beam)

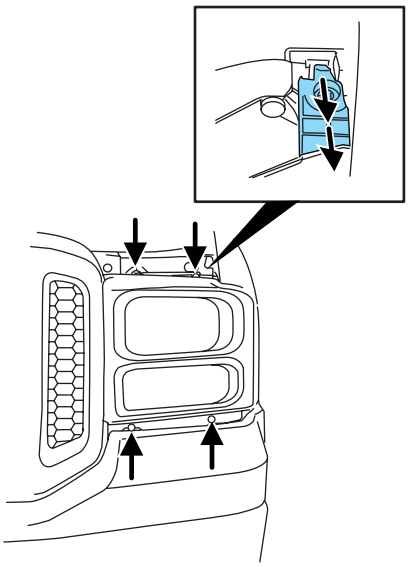
1. Make sure that the headlamp control is in the OFF position and open the hood.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

2. Remove the four screws from the top and bottom front of the headlamp assembly.

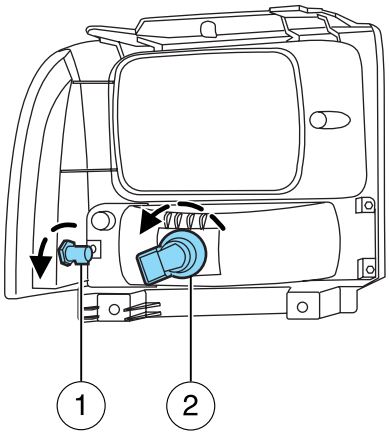
3. Press the retaining clip at the top of the headlamp assembly while pulling the assembly straight out.

If removing the lamp is difficult, removing the four screws along the top of the grill will help provide more clearance.



4. Remove the bulb assembly, (1) sidemarker or (2), park/turn by turning it counterclockwise.

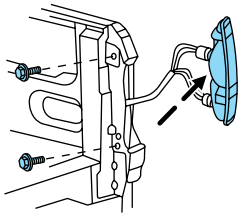
5. Pull the old bulb out from the socket.



Install the new bulb(s) in reverse order.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

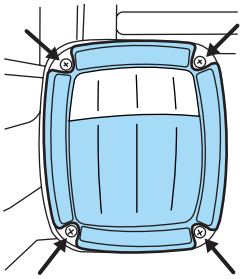
Replacing tail lamp/turn/backup lamp bulbs — F250/F350 only



1. Make sure the headlamp switch is in the OFF position and then open the tailgate to expose the lamp assemblies.
2. Remove the two bolts from the tail lamp assembly and carefully pull the lamp assembly from the tailgate pillar by releasing the two retaining tabs.
3. Rotate the bulb socket counterclockwise and remove from lamp assembly.
4. Pull the bulb straight out of the socket.

Install the new bulb(s) in reverse order.

Replacing brake/tail/backup lamp bulbs — F450/F550 only

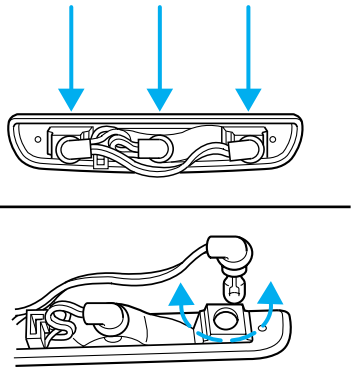


1. Make sure the headlamp switch is in the OFF position.
2. Remove the four screws and the lamp lens from lamp assembly.
3. Carefully pull the bulb straight out of the socket and push in the new bulb.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

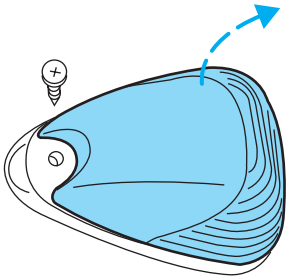
Replacing cargo lamp and high-mount brakelamp bulbs

1. Make sure the headlamp switch is in the OFF position.
2. Remove the two screws and lamp assembly from vehicle as wiring permits.
3. Remove the bulb socket by rotating counterclockwise.
4. Pull the bulb straight out of the socket.



Replacing roof marker bulbs

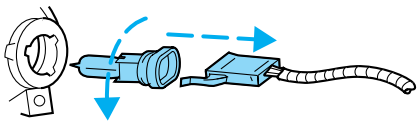
1. Make sure the headlamp switch is in the OFF position.
2. Remove the screw and lens from the lamp assembly.
3. Pull the bulb straight out of the socket.



Install the bulb(s) in reverse order.

Replacing foglamp bulbs (if equipped)

1. Make sure the headlamp switch is in the OFF position.
2. Remove the bulb socket from the foglamp by turning counterclockwise.

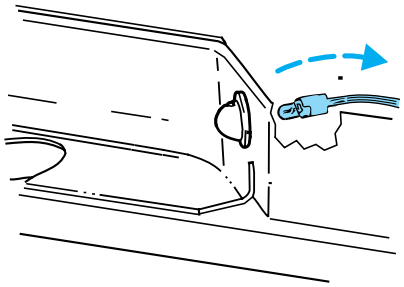


3. Disconnect the electrical connector from the foglamp bulb.

Install the new bulb(s) in reverse order.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Replacing license plate lamp bulbs



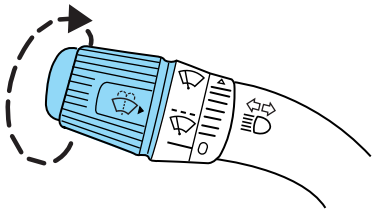
The license plate bulbs are located behind the rear bumper. To change the license plate lamp bulbs:

1. Reach behind the rear bumper to locate the bulb.
2. Twist the bulb socket counterclockwise and carefully pull to remove it from the lamp assembly.
3. Pull out the old bulb from the socket and push in the new bulb.
4. Install the bulb socket in lamp assembly by turning it clockwise.

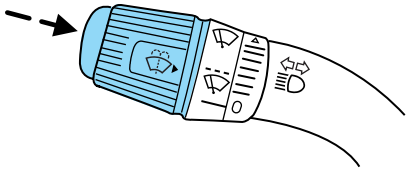
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

MULTI-FUNCTION LEVER

Windshield wiper: Rotate the end of the control away from you to increase the speed of the wipers; rotate towards you to decrease the speed of the wipers.



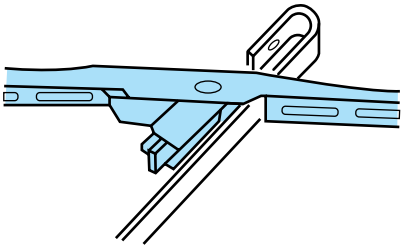
Windshield washer: Push the end of the stalk:



- briefly: causes a single swipe of the wipers without washer fluid.
- a quick push and hold: the wipers will swipe three times with washer fluid.
- a long push and hold: the wipers and washer fluid will be activated for up to ten seconds.

Changing the wiper blades

1. Pull the wiper arm away from the vehicle. Turn the blade at an angle from the wiper arm. Push the lock pin manually to release the blade and pull the wiper blade down toward the windshield to remove it from the arm.



2. Attach the new wiper to the wiper arm and press it into place until a click is heard.

3. Replace wiper blades at least once per year for optimum performance.

4. Poor wiper quality can sometimes be improved by cleaning the wiper blades, refer to *Windows and wiper blades* in the *Cleaning* chapter.

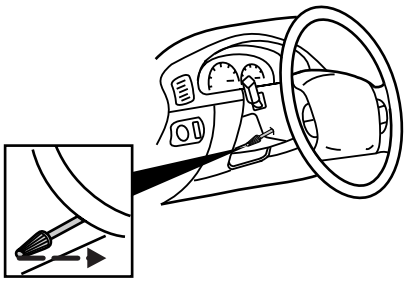
5. To prolong the life of the wiper blades, it is highly recommended to scrape off the ice on the windshield before turning on the wipers. The layer of ice has many sharp edges and can damage the micro edge of the wiper rubber element.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

TILT STEERING WHEEL (IF EQUIPPED)

To adjust the steering wheel:

1. Pull and hold the steering wheel release control toward you.
2. Move the steering wheel up or down until you find the desired location.
3. Release the steering wheel release control. This will lock the steering wheel in position.

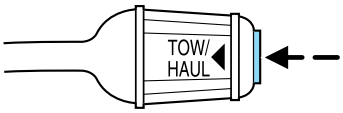


Never adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is moving.

TRANSMISSION CONTROL

Tow/Haul feature

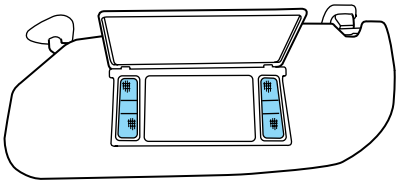
(5–speed automatic transmission) (if equipped)



To activate, press the transmission control switch (TCS) located on the gearshift. The TOW/HAUL indicator light will illuminate in the instrument cluster. The transmission will operate in all gears. Press the transmission control switch again to deactivate Tow/Haul mode. When you shut off and re-start your vehicle, the transmission will automatically return to normal mode with Tow/Haul feature deactivated, refer to the *Driving* chapter for more information.

ILLUMINATED VISOR MIRROR (IF EQUIPPED)

Lift the mirror cover to turn on the visor mirror lamps.



DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

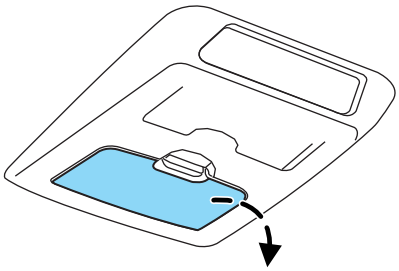
OVERHEAD CONSOLE (IF EQUIPPED)

The appearance of your vehicle's overhead console will vary according to your option package.

Storage compartment (if equipped)

Press the release on the door to open the storage compartment.

The storage compartment may be used to secure sunglasses or a similar object and the front tab can be used for holding tickets, paper, envelopes, etc. The front bin may be used to store small objects.

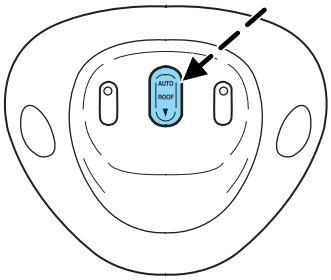


One-touch moon roof (if equipped)

The moon roof control is located on the overhead console.

Do not let children play with the moon roof or leave children unattended in the vehicle. They may seriously hurt themselves.

Note: The moon roof will open to the **"comfort"** position first before opening all the way. The "comfort" position helps to alleviate rumbling wind noise which may happen in the vehicle with the roof fully opened.



To open the moon roof: The moon roof is equipped with a one-touch open feature. Press and release the AUTO control. The moon roof will open to the "comfort" position. Press and release the control again to fully open. To stop the one-touch open feature press either the AUTO or ▼ control again.

To close the moon roof: Press and hold the ▼ control until the glass panel stops at the "comfort" position. Press and hold the control again until the glass stops moving. When fully closed, the rear portion of the glass panel will appear higher than the front portion.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

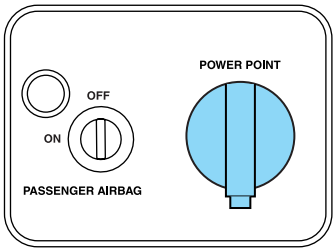
To vent the moon roof: Press and hold the ▼ control. **The moon roof must be in the closed position in order to move it into the vent position.** To close, press and hold the AUTO control until the glass panel stops moving.

The moon roof has a built-in sliding shade that can be manually opened or closed when the glass panel is shut. To close the shade, pull it toward the front of the vehicle.

When closing the moon roof, you should verify that it is free of obstructions and ensure that children and/or pets are not in the proximity of the moon roof opening.

AUXILIARY POWER POINT (12VDC)

Power outlets are designed for accessory plugs only. Do not hang any type of accessory or accessory bracket from the plug. Improper use of the power outlet can cause damage not covered by your warranty.



The auxiliary power point is located on the instrument panel.

Do not plug optional electrical accessories into the cigarette lighter. Use the power point.

Do not use the power point for operating the cigarette lighter element.

The maximum power each power point can supply depends on the fuse rating. For example: a 20A fuse should supply a maximum of 240 Watts, a 15A fuse should supply a maximum of 180 Watts and a 10A fuse should supply a maximum of 120 Watts. Exceeding these limits will result in a blown fuse.

Always keep the power point caps closed when not being used.

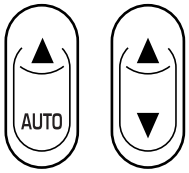
POWER WINDOWS (IF EQUIPPED)

Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle and do not let children play with the power windows. They may seriously injure themselves.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

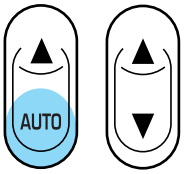
When closing the power windows, you should verify they are free of obstructions and ensure that children and/or pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.

Press and hold the bottom part of the rocker switch to open the window. Press and hold the top part of the rocker switch to close the window.



One touch down

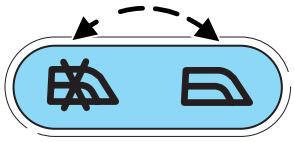
Allows the driver's window to open fully without holding the control down. Press completely down on AUTO and release quickly. Press again to stop.



Window lock (if equipped)

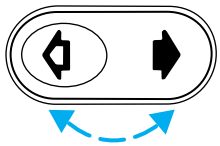
The window lock feature allows only the driver to operate the power windows.

To lock out all the window controls except for the driver's press the left side of the control. Press the right side to restore the window controls.



Power rear slider window (if equipped)

- Press and hold the open arrow side of control to open window.
- Press and hold the closed arrow side of control to close window.



DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

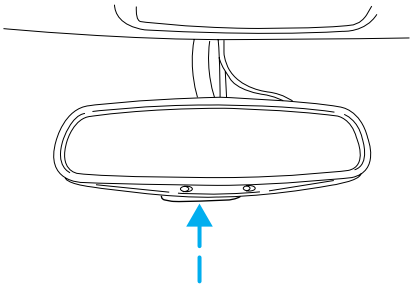
Accessory delay (if equipped)

With accessory delay, the window switches may be used for up to ten minutes after the ignition switch is turned to the OFF position or until any door is opened.

MIRRORS

Automatic dimming inside rear view mirror (if equipped)

Your vehicle is equipped with an inside rear view mirror with an auto-dimming function. The electronic day/night mirror will change from the normal state to the non-glare state when bright lights (glare) reach the mirror. When the mirror detects bright light from front or behind, it will automatically adjust to minimize glare.



Press the control located on the bottom of the mirror to turn the mirror on or off. The mirror will automatically return to the normal state whenever the vehicle is placed in R (Reverse)(when the mirror is on) to ensure a bright clear view when backing up.

Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum-based cleaning products.

Power side view mirrors (if equipped)

To adjust your mirrors:

1. Select **L** to adjust the left mirror or **R** to adjust the right mirror.
2. Move the control in the direction you wish to tilt the mirror.
3. Return to the center position to disable the adjust function.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

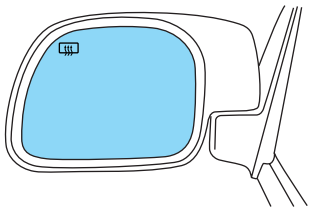
Heated outside mirrors (if equipped)

The main mirror glass is heated automatically to remove ice, mist and fog and activates when the vehicle is started.

Note: The mirrors may be **hot** to the touch but will not burn. This is a normal condition.

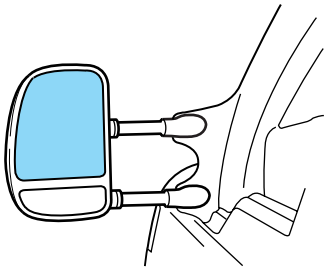
Type A

The mirror heating elements are designed to operate regardless of the geographic location of the vehicle. There is no switch to turn on, or other operator involvement required other than to start the vehicle.



Type B

The spotter mirror, below the main mirror, is not heated and must be adjusted manually.

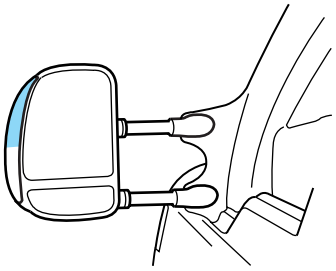


Do not remove ice from the mirrors with a scraper or attempt to readjust the mirror glass if it is frozen in place. These actions could cause damage to the glass and mirrors.

Mirror mounted side turn signal indicator (if equipped)

When the vehicle turn signals are activated, the outer portion of the mirror housing will blink amber.

The turn signal feature can be seen by other drivers who may approach from the rear of the vehicle.

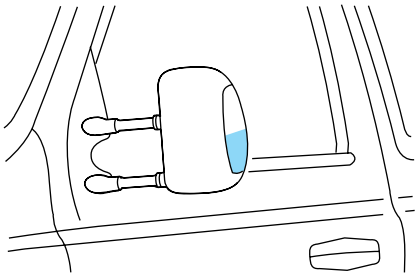


DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Clearance lamps (if equipped)

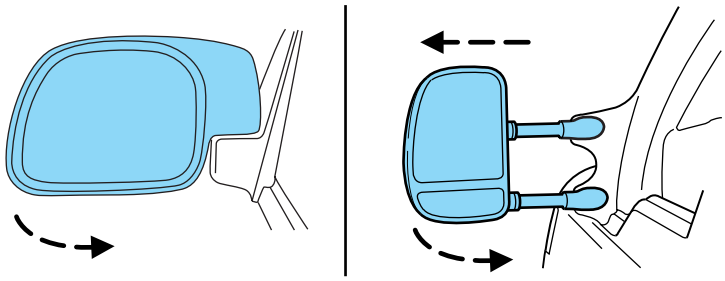
Illuminates when the headlamps or parking lamps are switched on.

This provides additional visibility of your vehicle to other drivers on the road.



Fold-away mirrors

The mirrors can be manually folded forward or backwards for narrow spaces like driving through an automatic car wash or backing out of a garage with the trailer tow mirror.



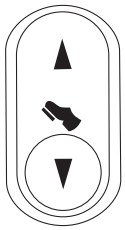
The telescoping feature (if equipped) allows the mirror to extend approximately 3.15 inches (80 mm). This feature is especially useful to the driver when towing a trailer.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

POWER ADJUSTABLE FOOT PEDALS (IF EQUIPPED)

The accelerator and brake pedal should only be adjusted when the vehicle is stopped and the gearshift lever is in the P (Park) position.

Press and hold the rocker control to adjust accelerator and brake pedal toward you or away from you.



The adjustment allows for approximately 2.75 inches (70 mm) of maximum travel.

Never adjust the accelerator and brake pedal with feet on the pedals while the vehicle is moving.

SPEED CONTROL (IF EQUIPPED)

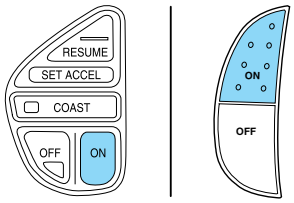
With speed control set, you can maintain a speed of 30 mph (48 km/h) or more without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal. Speed control does not work at speeds below 30 mph (48 km/h).

Do not use the speed control in heavy traffic or on roads that are winding, slippery or unpaved.

Setting speed control

The controls for using your speed control are located on the steering wheel for your convenience.

1. Press the ON control and release it.
2. Accelerate to the desired speed.

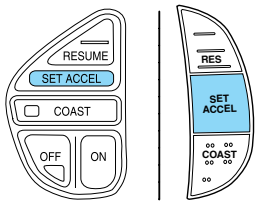


DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

3. Press the SET ACCEL control and release it.

4. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

5. The indicator light on the instrument cluster will turn on.

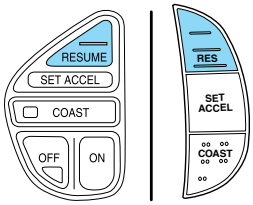


Note:

- Vehicle speed may vary momentarily when driving up and down a steep hill.
- If the vehicle speed increases above the set speed on a downhill, you may want to apply the brakes to reduce the speed.
- If the vehicle speed decreases more than 10 mph (16 km/h) below your set speed on an uphill, your speed control will disengage.

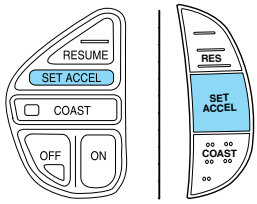
Resuming a set speed

Press the RES/RESUME control and release it. This will automatically return the vehicle to the previously set speed. The RES/RESUME control will not work if the vehicle speed is not faster than 30 mph (48 km/h).



Increasing speed while using speed control

There are two ways to set a higher speed:

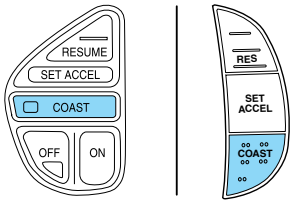


- Press and hold the SET ACCEL control until you get to the desired speed, then release the control. You can also use the SET ACCEL control to operate the Tap-Up function. Press and release this control to increase the vehicle set speed in small amounts by 1 mph (1.6 km/h).
- Use the accelerator pedal to get to the desired speed. When the vehicle reaches that speed press and release the SET ACCEL control.

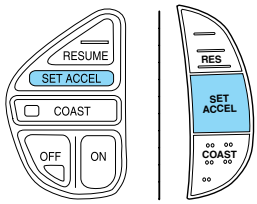
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Reducing speed while using speed control

There are two ways to reduce a set speed:



- Press and hold the COAST control until you get to the desired speed, then release the control. You can also use the COAST control to operate the Tap-Down function. Press and release this control to decrease the vehicle set speed in small amounts by 1 mph (1.6 km/h).
- Depress the brake pedal until the desired vehicle speed is reached, press the SET ACCEL control.

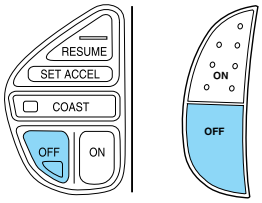


Turning off speed control

There are two ways to turn off the speed control:

- Depress the brake pedal or the clutch pedal (if equipped). This will not erase your vehicle's previously set speed.
- Press the speed control OFF control.

Note: When you turn off the speed control or the ignition, your speed control set speed memory is erased.



Indicator light (if equipped)

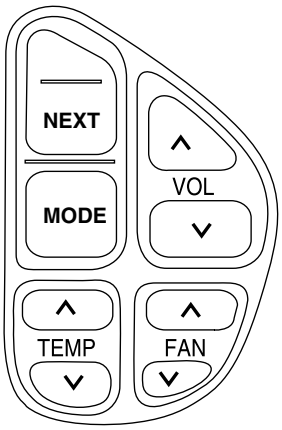
This light comes on when either the SET ACCEL or RES controls are pressed. The vehicle speed must be at or above 48 km/h (30 mph). It turns off when the speed control OFF control is pressed, the brake or clutch is applied, or the ignition is turned to the OFF position.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

STEERING WHEEL CONTROLS (IF EQUIPPED)

These controls allow you to operate some radio and climate control features.

Radio control features



- Press MODE to select AM, FM1, FM2, TAPE or CD (if equipped).

In Radio mode:

- Press NEXT to seek/scan to the next strong station.

In Tape mode:

- Press NEXT to listen to the next selection on the tape.

In CD mode:

- Press NEXT to listen to the next track on the disc.

In any mode:

- Press VOL up or down to adjust the volume.

Climate control features

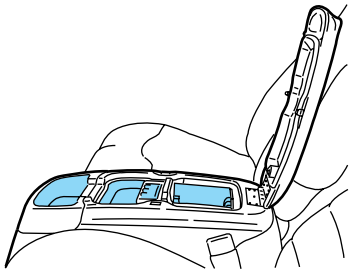
- Press TEMP up or down to adjust temperature.
- Press FAN up or down to adjust fan speed.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

CENTER CONSOLE (IF EQUIPPED)

Your vehicle may be equipped with a variety of console features. These include:

- Utility compartment with cassette/CD holder
- Coin holder
- Pen holder
- Writing surface



Use only soft cups in the cupholder. Hard objects can injure you in a collision.

CELL PHONE USE

The use of Mobile Communications Equipment has become increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, drivers must not compromise their own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile Communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits.

Mobile Communication Equipment includes, but is not limited to cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, in-vehicle communications systems, telematics devices and portable two-way radios.

A driver's first responsibility is the safe operation of the vehicle. The most important thing you can do to prevent a crash is to avoid distractions and pay attention to the road. Wait until it is safe to operate Mobile Communications Equipment.

MINI MESSAGE CENTER (IF EQUIPPED)

With the ignition in the ON position, the mini message center, located on your instrument cluster, displays text messages that alert you to possible problems or malfunctions in your vehicle's operating systems.

Note: The following warning messages will reappear after an ignition OFF-ON cycle has been completed.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Door ajar: Displays when the ignition is in the ON position and any door is open.

Check fuel cap: Displays when the fuel cap may not be properly installed. Continued driving with this display on may cause the Service engine soon warning light to come on. Refer to *Fuel filler cap* under the *Fuel Information section* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

Trailer fault (if equipped): Displayed if there is a short circuit on the electric brake output wire or the trailer brakes are drawing too much current. Refer to *Integrated trailer brake controller* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

TBC fault (if equipped): Displays in response to faults sensed by the TBC. In the event this message is seen, please take your vehicle to an authorized Ford dealership for diagnosis and repair. Refer to *Integrated trailer brake controller* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

Note: The following warning messages will reappear on the display every ten minutes.

Low fuel: Displays when the fuel level in the fuel tank is at or near empty (refer to *Fuel gauge* in this chapter).

Check gauge: Displays when any of the following conditions has occurred:

- The engine coolant temperature is high.
- The engine oil pressure is low.
- The fuel gauge is at or near empty.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

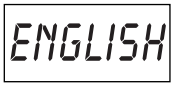
Check trailer (if equipped):
Displayed when a trailer connection becomes disconnected, either intentionally or unintentionally, and has been sensed during a given ignition cycle. Refer to *Integrated trailer brake controller* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

Language

The language options are English and French. The feature works as follows:

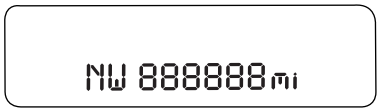
1. If present language is English, press and hold the SELECT/RESET button for 15 seconds or greater to convert the language selection to French. The word ″FRENCH″ will be displayed for 4 seconds as a confirmation that language has been changed.

2. If present language is French, press and hold the SELECT/RESET button for 15 seconds or greater to convert the language selection to English. The word ″ENGLISH″ will be displayed for 4 seconds as a confirmation that language has been changed.



MESSAGE CENTER (IF EQUIPPED)

With the ignition in the ON position, the message center, located on your instrument cluster, displays important vehicle information **through a constant monitor of vehicle systems.** You may select display features on the message center for a display of status preceded by a brief indicator chime. The system will also notify you of potential vehicle problems with a display of system warnings followed by a long indicator chime.

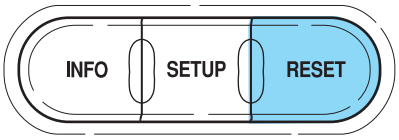


DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Selectable features

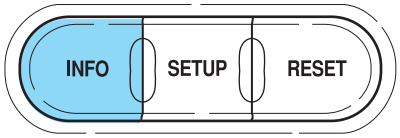
Reset

Press this control to select and reset functions shown in the INFO menu and SETUP menu.



Info menu

This control displays the following control displays:



- Odometer/Compass
- Trip odometer/Odometer/Compass
- Distance to Empty/Odometer/Compass
- Average Fuel Economy/Odometer/Compass
- Engine hour meter/Odometer/Compass

Odometer/Trip odometer

Refer to *Gauges* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter.

Compass display

The compass heading is displayed as one of N, NE, E, SE, S, SW, W and NW in the message center display.

The compass reading may be affected when you drive near large buildings, bridges, power lines and powerful broadcast antenna. Magnetic or metallic objects placed in, on or near the vehicle may also affect compass accuracy.

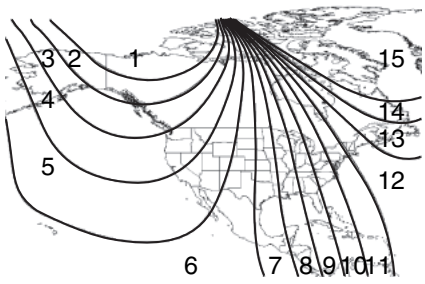
Usually, when something affects the compass readings, the compass will correct itself after a few days of operating your vehicle in normal conditions. If the compass still appears to be inaccurate, a manual calibration may be necessary. Refer to *Compass zone/calibration adjustment.*

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Most geographic areas (zones) have a magnetic north compass point that varies slightly from the northerly direction on maps. This variation is four degrees between adjacent zones and will become noticeable as the vehicle crosses multiple zones. A correct zone setting will eliminate this error. Refer to *Compass zone/calibration adjustment.*

Compass zone/calibration adjustment

1. Determine your magnetic zone by referring to the zone map.
2. Turn ignition to the ON position.
3. Start the engine.



4. From Info menu, press and hold the SETUP and RESET controls simultaneously until the message center display changes to show the current zone setting (XX).

5. Press the SETUP control repeatedly until the correct zone setting for your geographic location is displayed on the message center. The range of zone values are from 01 to 15 and “wraps” back to 01.

6. To exit the zone setting mode, and to “lock in” your change, press and release the RESET control.

Perform compass calibration in an open area free from steel structures and high voltage lines. For optimum calibration, turn off all electrical accessories (heater/air conditioning, wipers, etc.) and make sure all vehicle doors are shut.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

7. Press the RESET control to start the compass calibration function.

8. Slowly drive the vehicle in a circle (less than 3 mph [5 km/h]) until the CIRCLE SLOWLY TO CALIBRATE display changes to CALIBRATION COMPLETED. It will take up to five circles to complete calibration.

9. The compass is now calibrated.

Distance to empty (DTE)

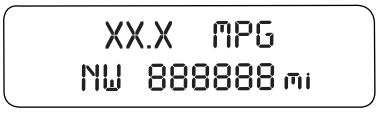
Selecting this function from the INFO menu estimates approximately how far you can drive with the fuel remaining in your tank under normal driving conditions. Remember to turn the ignition OFF when refueling to allow this feature to correctly detect the added fuel.

The DTE function will display LOW FUEL LEVEL and sound a tone for one second when you have approximately 50 miles (80 km) to empty. If you RESET this warning message, this display and tone will return within 10 minutes.

DTE is calculated using a running average fuel economy, which is based on your recent driving history of 500 miles (800 km). This value is not the same as the average fuel economy display. The running average fuel economy is reinitialized to a factory default value if the battery is disconnected.

Average fuel economy (AFE)

Select this function from the INFO menu to display your average fuel economy in miles/gallon or liters/100 km.



If you calculate your average fuel economy by dividing gallons of fuel used by 100 miles traveled (kilometers traveled by liters used), your figure may be different than displayed for the following reasons:

- Your vehicle was not perfectly level during fill-up

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

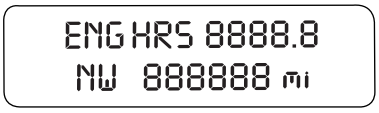
- Differences in the automatic shut-off points on the fuel pumps at service stations
- Variations in top-off procedure from one fill-up to another
- Rounding of the displayed values to the nearest 0.1 gallon (liter)

1. Drive the vehicle at least 5 miles (8 km) with the speed control system engaged to display a stabilized average.
2. Record the highway fuel economy for future reference.

It is important to press the RESET control after setting the speed control to get accurate highway fuel economy readings.

Engine hour meter

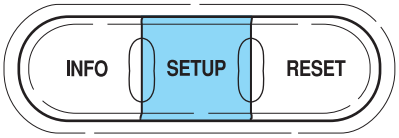
Select this function from the INFO menu to display the accumulated running time of the engine.



Setup menu

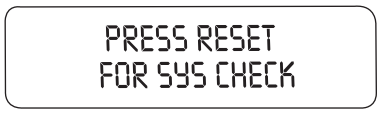
Press this control for the following displays:

- System Check
- Units (English/Metric)
- Autolock
- Autolamp Delay
- Language



System check

Selecting this function from the SETUP menu causes the message center to cycle through each of the systems being monitored. For each of the monitored systems, the message center will indicate either an OK message or a warning message for three seconds.



Pressing the RESET control cycles the message center through each of the systems being monitored.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

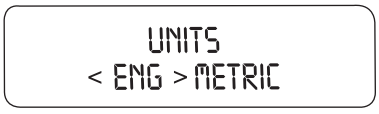
The sequence of the system check report and how it appears in the message center is as follows:

1. ENGINE TEMP
2. TRANS TEMP
3. OIL PRESSURE
4. BRAKE FLUID LEVEL
5. DOOR AJAR
6. FUEL CAP
7. AIR FILTER (diesel only)
8. FUEL LEVEL

Units (English/Metric)

1. Select this function from the SETUP menu for the current units to be displayed.

2. Press the RESET control to change from English to Metric.



Autolocks

This feature automatically locks all vehicle doors when the vehicle is shifted into any gear, putting the vehicle in motion.

1. To disable/enable the autolock feature, select this function from the SETUP control for the current display mode.

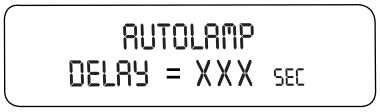
2. Press the RESET control to turn the autolocks ON or OFF.

Autolamp delay

This feature keeps your headlights on for up to three minutes after the ignition is switched off.

1. To disable/enable the autolamp delay feature, select this function from the SETUP control for the current display mode.

2. Press the RESET control to select the new Autolamp delay values of >0, >10, >20, >30, >60, >90, >120 or >180.



DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Language

1. Select this function from the SETUP menu for the current language to be displayed.

2. Pressing the RESET control cycles the message center through each of the language choices.

3. Press and hold the RESET control to set the language choice.

System warnings

System warnings alert you to possible problems or malfunctions in your vehicle's operating systems.

In the event of a multiple warning situation, the message center will cycle the display to show all warnings by displaying each one for 4 seconds.

The message center will display the last selected feature if there are no more warning messages. This allows you to use the full functionality of the message center after you acknowledge the warning by pressing the RESET control and clearing the warning message.

Warning messages that have been reset are divided into three categories:

- They will not disappear until a condition is changed.
- They will reappear on the display ten minutes from the reset.
- They will not reappear until an ignition OFF-ON cycle has been completed.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

This acts as a reminder that these warning conditions still exist within the vehicle.

Warning display	Status
Reduced engine power	Warning cannot be reset
Stop engine safely	
Low fuel level	Warning returns after 10 minutes
Low brake fluid level	
Low oil pressure	
Check engine temperature	
Trailer disconnected	
Water in fuel (diesel only)	
Check air filter (diesel only)	
Door ajar	Warning returns after the ignition key is turned from OFF to ON.
Check fuel cap	
Engine failsafe mode	
Check compass module	
Trailer fault	
TBC fault	

DOOR AJAR. Displayed when a door is not completely closed.

CHECK ENGINE TEMPERATURE. Displayed when the engine coolant is overheating. Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible, turn off the engine and let it cool. Check the coolant and coolant level. Refer to *Engine coolant* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your dealer as soon as possible.

REDUCED ENGINE POWER. Displayed when the engine is overheating. Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible, turn off the engine. If the warning stays on followed by an indicator chime or continues to come on, contact your dealer as soon as possible.

STOP ENGINE SAFELY. Displayed when the engine is overheating. Stop the vehicle as soon as safely possible, turn off the engine. If the warning stays on followed by an indicator chime or continues to come on, contact your dealer as soon as possible.

LOW FUEL LEVEL. Displayed as an early reminder of a low fuel condition.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

LOW BRAKE FLUID LEVEL. Indicates the brake fluid level is low and the brake system should be inspected immediately. Refer to *Brake fluid reservoir* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

LOW OIL PRESSURE. Displayed when the engine oil pressure is low. If this warning message is displayed, check the level of the engine oil. Refer to *Engine oil* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter for information about adding engine oil. If the oil level is OK and this warning persists, shut down the engine immediately and contact your dealership for service.

CHECK FUEL CAP. Displayed when the fuel filler cap is not properly installed. Check the fuel filler cap for proper installation. Refer to *Fuel filler cap* under the *Fuel Information section* in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

ENGINE FAILSAFE MODE. Displayed when the engine has defaulted to a 'limp-home' operation. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your dealer as soon as possible.

CHECK COMPASS MODULE. Displayed when the compass is not operating properly. If the warning stays on or continues to come on, contact your dealer as soon as possible.

TRAILER DISCONNECTED (if equipped): Displayed when a trailer connection becomes disconnected, either intentionally or unintentionally, and has been sensed during a given ignition cycle. Refer to *Intergrated trailer brake controller* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

TRAILER FAULT (if equipped): Displayed if there is a short circuit on the electric brake output wire or the trailer brakes are drawing too much current. Refer to *Intergrated trailer brake controller* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

TBC FAULT (if equipped): Displayed in response to faults sensed by the TBC. In the event this message is seen, please take your vehicle to an authorized Ford dealership for diagnosis and repair. Refer to *Intergrated trailer brake controller* in the *Tires, Wheels and Loading* chapter for more information.

WATER IN FUEL (diesel only): Refer to *Instrumentation* in your *6.0 Liter Power Stroke Direct Injection Turbo Diesel Owner's Guide Supplement.*

CHECK AIR FILTER (diesel only): Refer to *Instrumentation* in your *6.0 Liter Power Stroke Direct Injection Turbo Diesel Owner's Guide Supplement.*

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

DATA ERR. These messages indicate improper operation of the vehicle network communication between electronic modules.

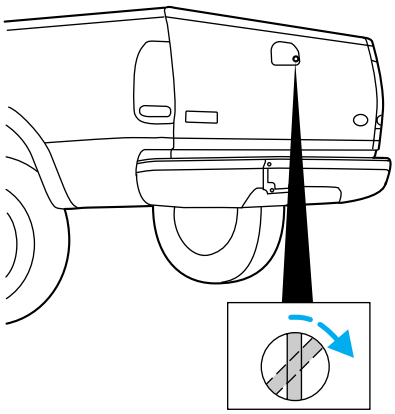
- Odometer
- Fuel flow
- Fuel level
- Trans temp
- Fuel cap
- Engine sensor
- Brake fluid
- Auto lock
- Auto lamp delay

Contact your dealer as soon as possible if these messages occur on a regular basis.

TAILGATE LOCK (IF EQUIPPED)

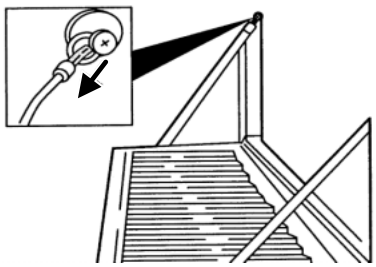
Your vehicle may be equipped with a tailgate lock designed to prevent theft of the tailgate.

- Insert ignition key and turn to the right to engage lock.
- Turn ignition key to the left to unlock.



DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Tailgate removal



Your tailgate is removable to allow more room for loading.

1. Lower the tailgate.
2. Use a screwdriver to pry the spring clip (on each connector) past the head of the support screw. Disconnect cable.
3. Disconnect the other cable.
4. Lift tailgate to a 45–degree angle.
5. Lift right side off of its hinge.
6. Lift left side off of its hinge.

To install, follow the removal procedures in reverse order.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

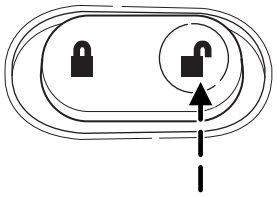
KEYS

The key operates all locks on your vehicle. You should always carry a second key with you in a safe place in case you require it in an emergency.

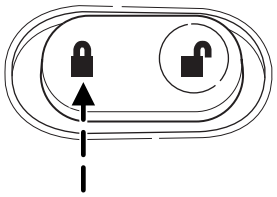
Your keys are programmed to your vehicle; using a non-programmed key will not permit your vehicle to start. If you lose your dealer supplied keys, replacement keys are available through your authorized dealer.

POWER DOOR LOCKS (IF EQUIPPED)

Press control to unlock all doors.



Press control to lock all doors.



Smart locks (if equipped)

This feature prevents you from locking yourself out of the vehicle if your key is still in the ignition.

When you open the driver's door and you lock the vehicle with the power door lock control, all the doors will lock, then the driver's door will automatically unlock reminding you that your key is still in the ignition.

The vehicle can still be locked, with the key in the ignition, using the manual lock button on the door, locking the driver's door with a key, by simultaneously pressing button 7 • 8 and the 9 • 0 controls on the remote entry keypad (if equipped), or using the lock button on the remote entry transmitter (if equipped).

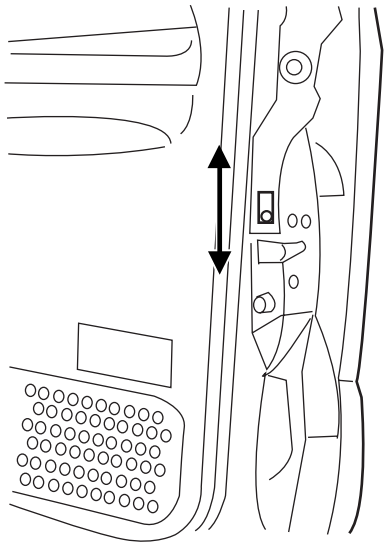
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Childproof door locks (if equipped)

- When these locks are set, the rear doors cannot be opened from the inside.
- The rear doors can be opened from the outside when the doors are unlocked.

The childproof locks are located on rear edge of each rear door and must be set separately for each door. Setting the lock for one door will not automatically set the lock for both doors.

- Move lock control up to engage the childproof lock.
- Move lock control down to disengage the childproof lock.



REMOTE ENTRY SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

This device complies with part 15 of the FCC rules and with RS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

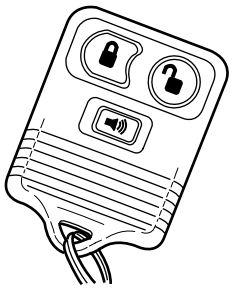
The typical operating range for your remote entry transmitter is approximately 33 feet (10 meters). A decrease in operating range could be caused by:

- weather conditions,
- nearby radio towers,
- structures around the vehicle, or
- other vehicles parked next to your vehicle.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Your vehicle is equipped with a remote entry system which allows you to:

- unlock the vehicle doors without a key.
- lock all the vehicle doors without a key.
- activate the personal alarm.



If there are problems with the remote entry system, make sure to take **ALL remote entry transmitters** with you to the dealership in order to aid in troubleshooting the problem.

Unlocking the doors

1. Press and release to unlock the driver's door. **Note:** The interior lamps will illuminate.

2. Press and release again within three seconds to unlock all the doors.

Locking the doors

1. Press and release to lock all the doors. The parking lamps will flash if all the doors are closed and locked.

2. Press and release again within three seconds to confirm that all the doors are closed and locked. **Note:** The doors will lock again, the horn will chirp once, and the parking lamps will flash once more.

If any of the doors are not properly closed the horn will make two quick chirps.

Power door lock disable feature (if equipped)

The UNLOCK feature on your power door locks will not work from inside the vehicle when:

- the ignition has been turned to the 3 (OFF) position, and
- 20 seconds elapse after all vehicle doors are closed and locked using the remote entry transmitter, or the power door lock control (while the accompanying door is open).

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

The UNLOCK feature will work again after:

- a door has become ajar,
- the ignition is turned to the 4 (ON) position,
- unlocking the vehicle using the keyless entry keypad,
- or using the UNLOCK control on your remote entry transmitter (if equipped).

This feature is initially deactivated, but may be activated by taking your vehicle to an authorized Ford dealer.

Sounding a panic alarm

Press to activate the alarm. Press again or turn the ignition to 4 (ON) to deactivate.

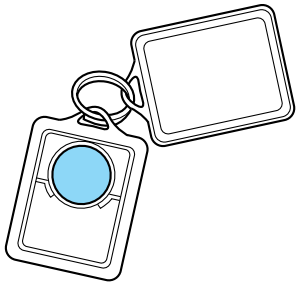
Note: The panic alarm will only operate when the ignition is in the 2 (LOCK) or 3 (OFF) position.

Replacing the battery

The remote entry transmitter uses one coin type three-volt lithium battery CR2032 or equivalent.

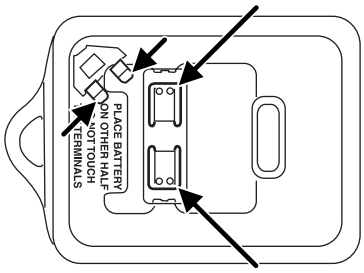
To replace the battery:

1. Twist a thin coin between the two halves of the remote entry transmitter near the key ring. DO NOT TAKE THE RUBBER COVER AND CIRCUIT BOARD OFF THE FRONT HOUSING OF THE REMOTE ENTRY TRANSMITTER.



DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

2. Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals on the back surface of the circuit board.



3. Remove the old battery. **Note:** Please refer to local regulations when disposing of transmitter batteries.

4. Insert the new battery. Refer to the diagram inside the remote entry transmitter for the correct orientation of the battery. Press the battery down to ensure that the battery is fully seated in the battery housing cavity.

5. Snap the two halves back together.

Note: Replacement of the battery will **not** cause the remote transmitter to become deprogrammed from your vehicle. The remote transmitter should operate normally after battery replacement.

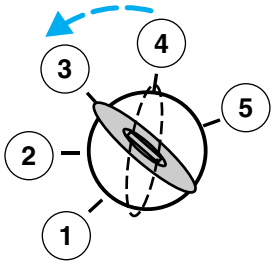
Replacing lost remote entry transmitters

If you would like to have your remote entry transmitter reprogrammed because you lost one, or would like to buy additional remote entry transmitters, you can either reprogram them yourself, or take **all remote entry transmitters** to your authorized dealer for reprogramming.

How to reprogram your remote entry transmitters

You must have **all remote keyless entry keypads and remote entry transmitters** (maximum of four) available before beginning this procedure.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



To program the keyless entry keypads remote entry transmitters yourself:

1. Ensure the vehicle is electronically unlocked.
2. Put the key in the ignition.
3. Turn the key from the 2 (LOCK) position to 3 (OFF).
4. Cycle eight times rapidly (within 10 seconds) between the 3 (OFF) position and 4 (ON). **Note:** The eighth turn must end in the 4 (ON) position.
5. The doors will lock, then unlock, to confirm that the programming mode has been activated.
6. Within 20 seconds, program the keyless entry keypad by pressing the 7 • 8 and the 9 • 0 controls at the same time.
7. The doors will lock, then unlock, to confirm that the keypad programming mode has been activated.
8. Within 20 seconds, program the remote entry transmitter by pressing any button on the transmitter. **Note:** If more than 20 seconds have passed you will need to start the procedure over again.
9. The doors will again lock, then unlock, to confirm that this remote entry transmitter has been programmed.
10. Repeat Step 8 to program each additional remote keypad or entry transmitter.
11. Turn the ignition to the 3 (OFF) position after you have finished programming all of the remote entry transmitters. **Note:** If more than 20 seconds have passed you will need to start the procedure over again.
12. The doors will once again lock, then unlock, to confirm that the programming mode has been exited.

Illuminated entry

The interior lamps illuminate when the remote entry system is used to unlock the door(s).

The illuminated entry system will turn off the interior lights if:

- the ignition switch is turned to the 4 (ON) position, or
- the remote transmitter lock control is pressed, or

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

- the 7 • 8 and the 9 • 0 controls on the keyless entry keypad are pressed, or
- after 25 seconds of illumination.

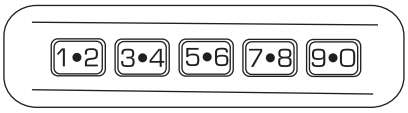
The dome lamp control (if equipped) must **not** be set to the off position for the illuminated entry system to operate.

The inside lights will not turn off if:

- they have been turned on with the dimmer control, or
- any door is open.

The battery saver will shut off the interior lamps 30 minutes after the ignition has been turned to the 3 (OFF) position, 10 minutes after if the dome lamp is off, and 30 minutes after if the dome lamp switch is left on.

KEYLESS ENTRY SYSTEM



You can use the keyless entry keypad to lock or unlock the doors without using a key.

The keypad can be operated with the factory set 5–digit entry code; this code is located on the owner's wallet card in the glove box, is marked on the computer module, and is available from your authorized dealer. You can also create your own 5–digit personal entry code.

When pressing the controls on the keypad, press the middle of the controls to ensure a good activation.

Programming a personal entry code

To create your own personal entry code:

1. Enter the factory set code.
2. Within five seconds press the 1 • 2 on the keypad.
3. Enter your personal 5-digit code. Each number must be entered within five seconds of each other.
4. The doors will again lock then unlock to confirm that your personal keycode has been programmed to the module.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Tips:

- Do not set a code that uses five of the same number.
- Do not use five numbers in sequential order.
- The factory set code will work even if you have set your own personal code.
- If you set a second personal code it will erase your first personal code.

Erasing personal code

1. Enter the factory set 5–digit code.
2. Within five seconds, press the 1 • 2 on the keypad and release.
3. Press and hold the 1 • 2 for two seconds. This must be done within five seconds of completing Step 2.

Your personal code is now erased and only the factory set 5–digit code will work.

Anti-scan feature

If an incorrect code has been entered 7 times (35 consecutive button presses), the keypad will go into an anti-scan mode. This mode disables the keypad for one minute and the keypad lamp will flash during this time.

The anti-scan feature will turn off after:

- one minute of keypad inactivity.
- pressing the control on the remote entry transmitter.
- the ignition is turned to the 4 (ON) position.

Unlocking and locking the doors using keyless entry

To unlock the driver's door, enter the factory set 5-digit code or your personal code. Each number must be pressed within five seconds of each other. The interior lamps will illuminate after entering a valid keypad entry code.

To unlock all doors, press the 3 • 4 control within five seconds.

To lock all doors, press the 7 • 8 and the 9 • 0 at the same time. You **do not** need to enter the keypad code first. **Note:** The interior lamps will turn off.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Autolock (if equipped)

This feature automatically locks all vehicle doors when the following conditions are met:

- the ignition key is in the 4 (ON) position,
- all the doors are closed,
- the brake is pressed before reaching 5 mph (8 km/h), and
- the vehicle is traveling more than 5 mph (8 km/h).

Relock

The autolock feature repeats when the following conditions are met:

- the vehicle's speed is less than 5 mph (8 km/h),
- any door is opened then closed while the ignition is in the 4 (ON) position,
- the brake is pressed before reaching 5 mph (8 km/h), and
- the vehicle is traveling more than 5 mph (8 km/h).

To deactivate/reactivate the autolock feature using the keypad

Your vehicle comes with the autolock feature activated. To deactivate/reactivate this feature:

1. Ensure that the anti-theft system is not armed.
2. Turn the ignition to the 3 (OFF) position.
3. Close all the doors, liftgate and cargo doors.
4. Enter the 5-digit entry code.
5. Press and hold the 7 • 8. While holding the 7 • 8, press and release the 3 • 4.
6. Release the 7 • 8.

The horn will chirp once when the system has been successfully deactivated.

The horn will chirp twice (one short and one long chirp) when the system has been successfully reactivated.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

To deactivate/reactivate the autolock feature using the power door unlock control

You must complete Steps 1-7 within 30 seconds or the procedure will have to be repeated. If the procedure needs to be repeated, you must wait 30 seconds.

1. Insert the key and turn the ignition to the 4 (ON) position.
2. Press the power door unlock control three times.
3. Turn the ignition from the 4 (ON) position to the 3 (OFF) position.
4. Press the power door unlock control three times.
5. Turn the ignition back to the 4 (ON) position. The horn will chirp.
6. Press the unlock control, then press the lock control. The horn will chirp once if autolock was deactivated or twice (one short and one long chirp) if autolock was activated. **Note:** Pressing the power door UNLOCK/LOCK button again will toggle between activating and deactivating the autolock feature.
7. Turn the ignition to the 3 (OFF) position. The horn will chirp once to confirm the procedure is complete.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

SEATING

Notes:

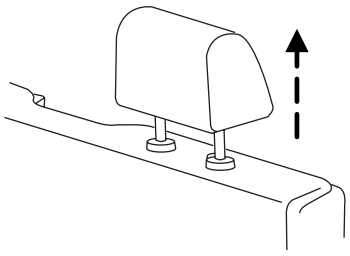
Reclining the seatback can cause an occupant to slide under the seat's safety belt, resulting in severe personal injuries in the event of a collision.

Do not pile cargo higher than the seatbacks to reduce the risk of injury in a collision or sudden stop.

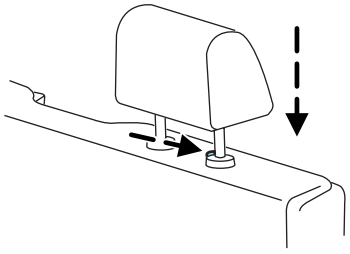
Head restraints

The purpose of these head restraints is to help limit head motion in the event of a rear collision. To properly adjust your head restraints, lift the head restraint so that it is located directly behind your head or as close to that position as possible.

The head restraints can be moved up and down. Lift the head restraint so that it is located directly or as close as possible behind your head.



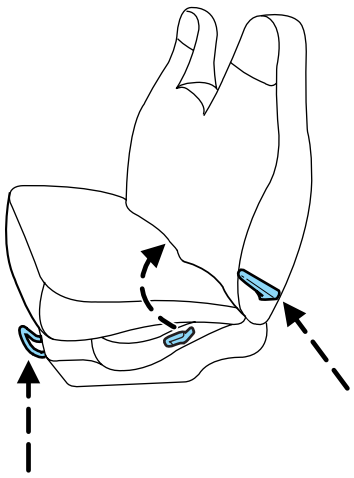
Push control to lower head restraint.



DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

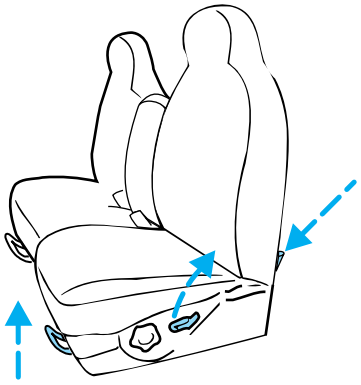
Full bench seat (if equipped)

- Lift the release bar to move the seat forward or backward. Ensure that the seat is relatched into place.
- Pull up on the lever located at the bottom of the seatback to quickly fold the seatback forward.
- Pull up on the lever located at the side of the seat cushion to recline the seatback and to return the seat to the upright position.



40/20/40 split bench seat (if equipped)

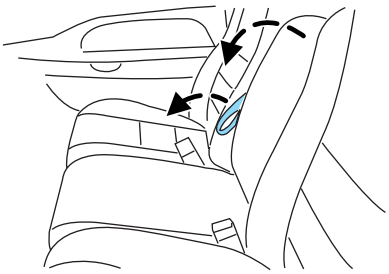
- Lift the track release bar to move the seat forward or backward. Ensure the seat is relatched into place.
- Pull the handle on the side of the seat up to recline the seat.
- Push down the lever located at the bottom of the seatback to quickly fold the seatback forward.



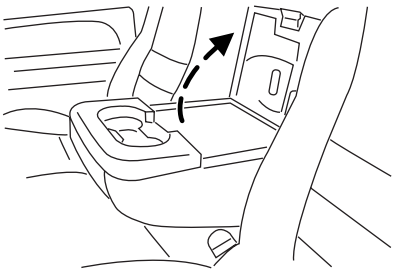
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

40/20/40 front seat armrest and console (if equipped)

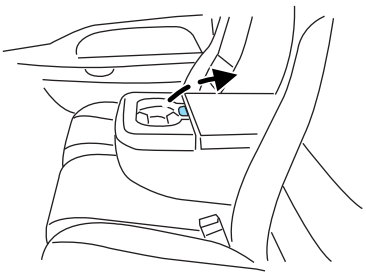
To release the armrest, pull forward on the strap and pull the armrest down.



To gain access to the storage compartment in your armrest, lift the latch to open the lid. The lid cannot be opened in the upright position.



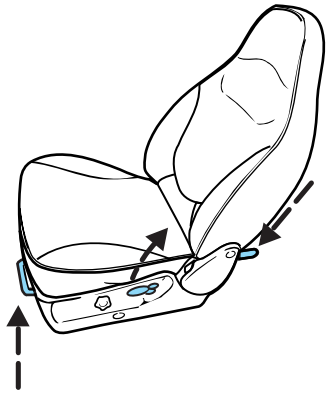
Lift up armrest to return it to a center seatback.



DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Captain's chair (if equipped)

- Lift the bar to move the seat forward or rearward. Make sure that the seat is relatched into place.
- To recline the seatback, pull the release lever handle located on the side of the seat up.
- Push down the lever (if equipped) located at the bottom of the seatback to quickly fold the seatback forward.



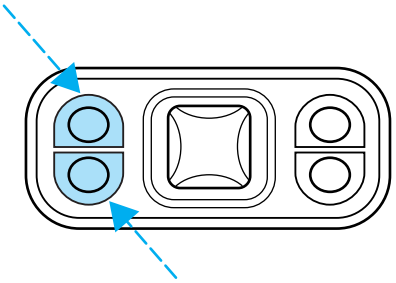
Adjusting the front power seat (if equipped)

The control is located on the outboard side of the seat cushion.

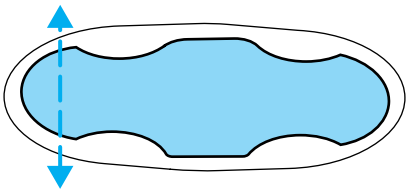
Your vehicle will only be equipped with one of the two controls shown.

Press to raise or lower the front portion of the seat cushion.

- Type A



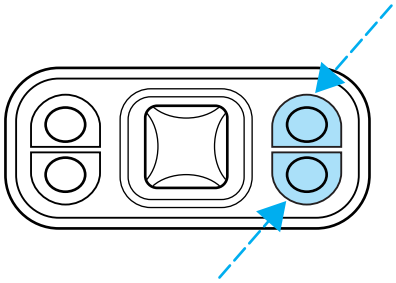
- Type B



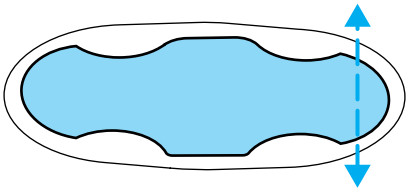
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Press to raise or lower the rear portion of the seat cushion.

- Type A

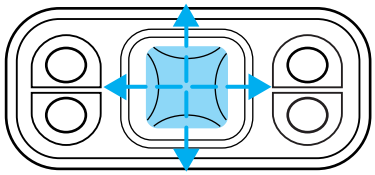


- Type B



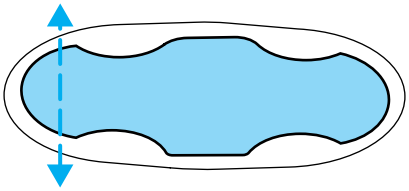
- Type A

  Press the control to move the seat forward, backward, up or down.



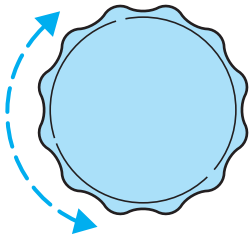
- Type B

  Press the control to move the seat forward or backward.



DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Using the manual lumbar support



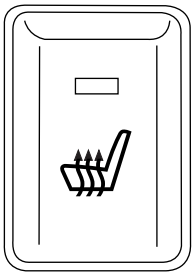
For more lumbar support, turn the lumbar support control toward the front of vehicle.

For less lumbar support, turn the lumbar support control toward the rear of vehicle.

Heated seats (if equipped)

To operate the heated seats, do the following:

- Push control to activate.
- Push again to deactivate.



The indicator light on the control will illuminate when activated.

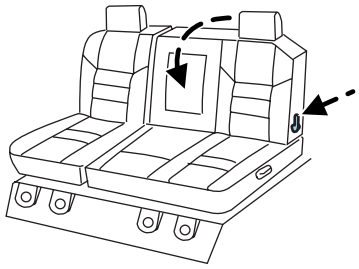
The system will not automatically shutoff unless control is pushed to deactivate. If system is not manually terminated at last use, then system will remain active at next ignition key cycle.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

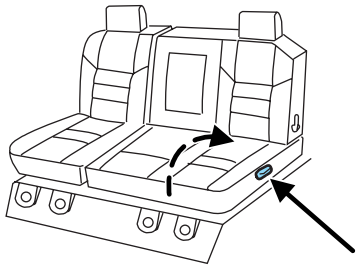
REAR FOLDING SEAT SYSTEM WITH LOAD FLOOR (IF EQUIPPED)

The rear seatback has a split 60/40 seat. Each seat cushion can be flipped up into the seatback position.

1. Pull down the latch lever located on the bottom seat back to fold the seat back forward.



2. Pull up on the lever located on the side of the seat cushion to rotate the cushion up until it locks into a vertical storage position, gaining access to the grocery hook located on the underside of the driver-side seat cushion. The maximum load is 25 lb. (11 kg).



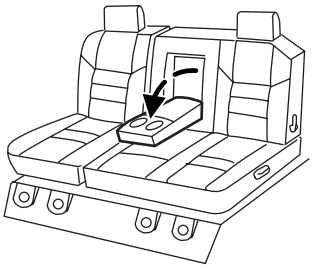
Returning the seat to seating position

- Pull lever on the side of the seat to release seat cushion from storage position.
- Push seat cushion down until it locks into horizontal position.

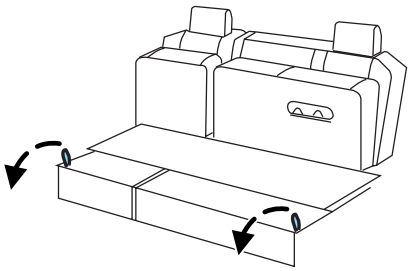
Before returning the seatback to its original position, make sure that cargo or any objects are not trapped underneath the seatback. After returning the seatback to its original position, pull on the seatback to ensure that it has fully latched. An unlatched seat may become dangerous in the event of a sudden stop or collision.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

To gain access to the cupholders and tray, pull down on the armrest.



To gain access to the 60/40 load floor, store the cushion in the upright locked position. Pull up on the straps located at the sides of the load floor, and rotate forward until resting on the carpet.



SAFETY RESTRAINTS

Safety restraints precautions

Always drive and ride with your seatback upright and the lap belt snug and low across the hips.

To reduce the risk of injury, make sure children sit in the back seat where they can be properly restrained.

Never let a passenger hold a child on his or her lap while the vehicle is moving. The passenger cannot protect the child from injury in a collision.

All occupants of the vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their safety belts, even when an air bag supplemental restraint system (SRS) is provided.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and safety belts. Be sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and using a safety belt properly.

In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a safety belt.

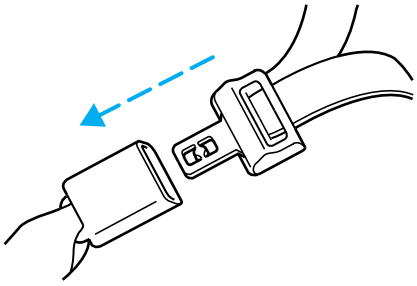
Each seating position in your vehicle has a specific safety belt assembly which is made up of one buckle and one tongue that are designed to be used as a pair. 1) Use the shoulder belt on the outside shoulder only. Never wear the shoulder belt under the arm. 2) Never swing the safety belt around your neck over the inside shoulder. 3) Never use a single belt for more than one person.

Always transport children 12 years old and under in the back seat and always properly use appropriate child restraints.

Safety belts and seats can become hot in a vehicle that has been closed up in sunny weather; they could burn a small child. Check seat covers and buckles before you place a child anywhere near them.

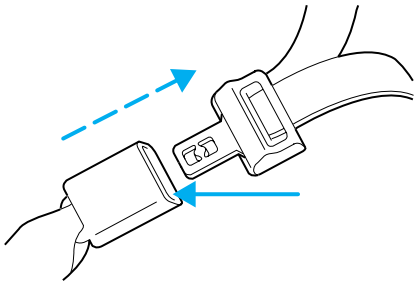
Combination lap and shoulder belts

1. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from) until you hear a snap and feel it latch. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened in the buckle.



DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

2. To unfasten, push the release button and remove the tongue from the buckle.



The front outboard and rear outboard safety restraints in the vehicle are combination lap and shoulder belts. The front outboard passenger and rear seat outboard safety belts have two types of locking modes described below:

Vehicle sensitive mode

This is the normal retractor mode, which allows free shoulder belt length adjustment to your movements and locking in response to vehicle movement. For example, if the driver brakes suddenly or turns a corner sharply, or the vehicle receives an impact of approximately 5 mph (8 km/h) or more, the combination safety belts will lock to help reduce forward movement of the driver and passengers.

On SuperCab and Crew Cab models, the front seat belt system can also be made to lock manually by quickly pulling on the shoulder belt.

Rear seat belts (if equipped) cannot be made to lock up by pulling quickly on the belt.

Automatic locking mode

When to use the automatic locking mode

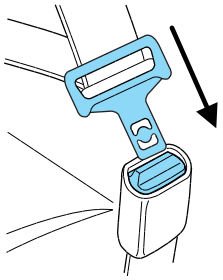
In this mode, the shoulder belt is automatically pre-locked. The belt will still retract to remove any slack in the shoulder belt. The automatic locking mode is not available on the driver safety belt.

This mode should be used **any time** a child safety seat is installed in a passenger front or outboard rear seating position (if equipped). Children 12 years old and under should be properly restrained in the rear seat whenever possible. Refer to *Safety restraints for children* or *Safety seats for children* later in this chapter.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

How to use the automatic locking mode

- Buckle the combination lap and shoulder belt.



- Grasp the shoulder portion and pull downward until the entire belt is pulled out.

- Allow the belt to retract. As the belt retracts, you will hear a clicking sound. This indicates the safety belt is now in the automatic locking mode.

How to disengage the automatic locking mode

Disconnect the combination lap/shoulder belt and allow it to retract completely to disengage the automatic locking mode and activate the vehicle sensitive (emergency) locking mode.

After any vehicle collision, the front passenger and rear outboard seat belt systems must be checked by a qualified technician to verify that the “automatic locking retractor” feature for child seats is still functioning properly. In addition, all seat belts should be checked for proper function.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

BELT AND RETRACTOR ASSEMBLY MUST BE REPLACED if the seat belt assembly "automatic locking retractor" feature or any other seat belt function is not operating properly when checked according to the procedures in the *Workshop Manual*. Failure to replace the belt and retractor assembly could increase the risk of injury in collisions.

Energy Management Feature

- This vehicle has a seat belt system with an energy management feature at the front outboard seating positions to help further reduce the risk of injury in the event of a head-on collision.
- The front outboard seat belt systems have a retractor assembly that is designed to pay out webbing in a controlled manner. This feature is designed to help reduce the belt force acting on the occupant's chest.

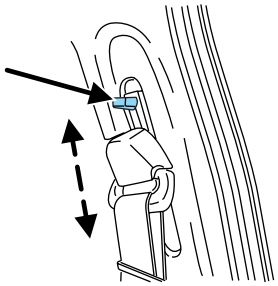
Front safety belt height adjustment

The front outboard seats are equipped with belt height adjusters.

If your vehicle is equipped with seat integrated restraints (SIR), you will not have a safety belt height adjuster.

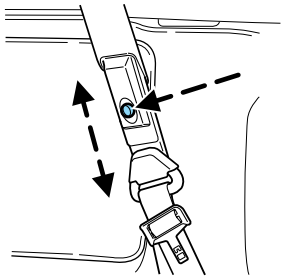
Adjust the height of the shoulder belt so the belt rests across the middle of your shoulder.

- Regular Cab and 4–door Crew Cab



DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

- 4–door Super Cab



To adjust the shoulder belt height, push the button and slide the height adjuster up or down. Release the button and pull down on the height adjuster to make sure it is locked in place.

Position the safety belt height adjusters so that the belt rests across the middle of your shoulder. Failure to adjust the safety belt properly could reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt and increase the risk of injury in a collision.

Lap belts

Adjusting the lap belt

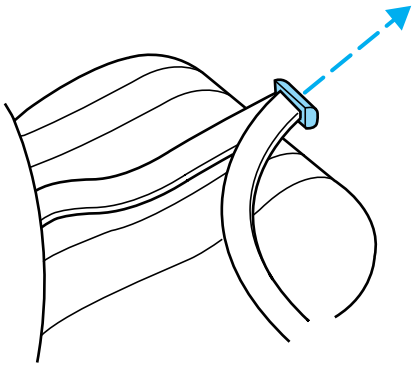
The lap belt should fit snugly and as low as possible around the hips, not across the waist.

- **1st row center seating position**

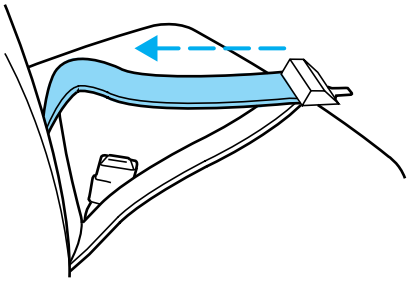
The lap belt does not adjust automatically.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Insert the tongue into the correct buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from). To lengthen the belt, turn the tongue at a right angle to the belt and pull across your lap until it reaches the buckle. To tighten the belt, pull the loose end of the belt through the tongue until it fits snugly across the hips.



Shorten and fasten the belt when not in use.



- **2nd row center seating position (if equipped)**

The lap belt will not adjust automatically. To fasten, grasp the tongue, and with a continuous motion, pull out enough webbing to buckle the tongue into the correct buckle. If you did not pull out enough webbing to reach the buckle, allow the tongue to retract fully before trying to pull it out again.

Safety belt warning light and indicator chime

The safety belt warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster and a chime sounds to remind the occupants to fasten their safety belts.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Conditions of operation

If...	Then...
The driver's safety belt is not buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the ON position...	The safety belt warning light illuminates 1-2 minutes and the warning chime sounds 4-8 seconds.
The driver's safety belt is buckled while the indicator light is illuminated and the warning chime is sounding...	The safety belt warning light and warning chime turn off.
The driver's safety belt is buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the ON position...	The safety belt warning light and indicator chime remain off.

BeltMinder™

The BeltMinder™ feature is a supplemental warning to the safety belt warning function. This feature provides additional reminders to the driver that the driver's safety belt is unbuckled by intermittently sounding a chime and illuminating the safety belt warning lamp in the instrument cluster.

If...	Then...
The driver's safety belt is not buckled before the vehicle has reached at least 3 mph (5 km/h) and 1-2 minutes have elapsed since the ignition switch has been turned to ON...	The BeltMinder™ feature is activated - the safety belt warning light illuminates and the warning chime sounds for 6 seconds every 30 seconds, repeating for approximately 5 minutes or until safety belt is buckled.
The driver's safety belt is buckled while the safety belt indicator light is illuminated and the safety belt warning chime is sounding...	The BeltMinder™ feature will not activate.
The driver's safety belt is buckled before the ignition switch is turned to the ON position...	The BeltMinder™ feature will not activate.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

The following are reasons most often given for not wearing safety belts (All statistics based on U.S. data):

Reasons given...	Consider...
"Crashes are rare events"	**36700 crashes occur every day.** The more we drive, the more we are exposed to "rare" events, even for good drivers. *1 in 4 of us will be seriously injured in a crash during our lifetime.*
"I'm not going far"	**3 of 4** fatal crashes occur within **25** miles (40 km) of home.
"Belts are uncomfortable"	We design our safety belts to enhance comfort. If you are uncomfortable - try different positions for the safety belt upper anchorage and seatback which should be as upright as possible; this can improve comfort.
"I was in a hurry"	**Prime time for an accident.** BeltMinder™ reminds us to take a few seconds to buckle up.
"Safety belts don't work"	**Safety belts,** when used properly, **reduce risk of death** to front seat occupants by **45% in cars,** and by **60% in light trucks.**
"Traffic is light"	**Nearly 1 of 2 deaths occur in single-vehicle crashes,** many when no other vehicles are around.
"Belts wrinkle my clothes"	Possibly, but a serious crash can do much more than wrinkle your clothes, particularly if you are unbelted.
"The people I'm with don't wear belts"	Set the example, teen deaths occur 4 times more often in vehicles with TWO or MORE people. Children and younger brothers/sisters imitate behavior they see.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Reasons given...	Consider...
"I have an air bag"	Air bags offer greater protection when used with safety belts. Frontal airbags are not designed to inflate in rear and side crashes or rollovers.
"I'd rather be thrown clear"	Not a good idea. **People** who are **ejected are 40 times more likely to DIE.** Safety belts help prevent ejection, WE CAN'T "PICK OUR CRASH".

Do not sit on top of a buckled safety belt to avoid the BeltMinder™ chime. Sitting on the safety belt will increase the risk of injury in an accident. To disable (one-time) or deactivate the BeltMinder™ feature please follow the directions stated below.

One time disable

Any time the safety belt is buckled and then unbuckled during an ignition ON cycle, the BeltMinder™ will be disabled for that ignition cycle only.

Deactivating/activating the BeltMinder™ feature

Read Steps 1 - 5 thoroughly before proceeding with the deactivation/activation programming procedure.

The BeltMinder™ feature can be deactivated/activated by performing the following procedure:

Before following the procedure, make sure that:

- the parking brake is set
- the gearshift is in P (Park) (automatic transmission)
- the ignition switch is in the OFF position
- all vehicle doors are closed
- the driver's safety belt is unbuckled
- the parklamps/headlamps are in OFF position

To reduce the risk of injury, do not deactivate/activate the Belt Minder feature while driving the vehicle.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

1. Turn the ignition switch to the RUN (or ON) position. (DO NOT START THE ENGINE)

2. Wait until the safety belt warning light turns off. (Approximately 1 minute)

- Step 3 must be completed within 60 seconds after the safety belt warning light turns off.

3. At a moderate speed, buckle then unbuckle the safety belt 9 times, ending with the safety belt in the unbuckled state.

- After Step 3 is complete, the safety belt warning light will be turned on for 3 seconds.
- If Step 4 does not occur within 10 seconds at the end of Step 3, Beltminder™ will automatically exit programming mode without changing its enable status.

4. Within 10 seconds of the light turning on, at a moderate speed, buckle then unbuckle the safety belt.

- This will disable the BeltMinder™ feature if it is currently enabled. As confirmation, the safety belt warning light will flash 4 times per second for 3 seconds.
- This will enable the BeltMinder™ feature if it is currently disabled. As confirmation, the safety belt warning light will flash 4 times per second for 3 seconds, followed by 3 seconds with the light off, then followed by the safety belt warning light flashing 4 times per second for 3 seconds again.

5. After receiving confirmation, the deactivation/activation procedure is complete.

Safety belt extension assembly

If the safety belt is too short when fully extended, there is a 8 inch (20 cm) safety belt extension assembly that can be added (part number 611C22). This assembly can be obtained from your dealer at no cost.

Use only extensions manufactured by the same supplier as the safety belt. Manufacturer identification is located at the end of the webbing on the label. Also, use the safety belt extension only if the safety belt is too short for you when fully extended.

Do not use extensions to change the fit of the shoulder belt across the torso.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

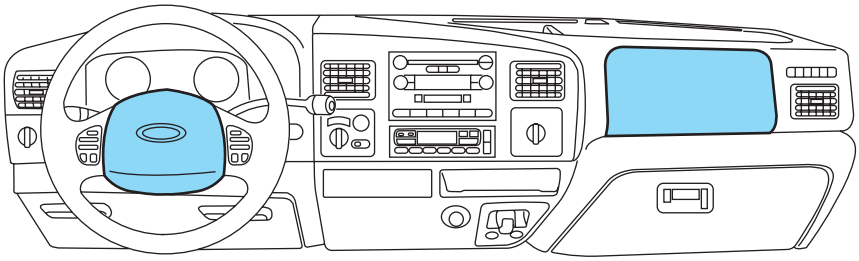
Safety belt maintenance

Inspect the safety belt systems periodically to make sure they work properly and are not damaged. Inspect the safety belts to make sure there are no nicks, tears or cuts. Replace if necessary. All safety belt assemblies, including retractors, buckles, front seat belt buckle assemblies, buckle support assemblies (slide bar-if equipped), shoulder belt height adjusters (if equipped), shoulder belt guide on seatback (if equipped), child safety seat LATCH and tether anchors, and attaching hardware, should be inspected after a collision. Ford Motor Company recommends that all safety belt assemblies in use in vehicles involved in a collision be replaced. However, if the collision was minor and a qualified technician finds that the belts do not show damage and continue to operate properly, they do not need to be replaced. Safety belt assemblies not in use during a collision should also be inspected and replaced if either damage or improper operation is noted.

Failure to inspect and if necessary replace the safety belt assembly under the above conditions could result in severe personal injuries in the event of a collision.

For proper care of soiled safety belts, refer to *Interior* in the *Cleaning* chapter.

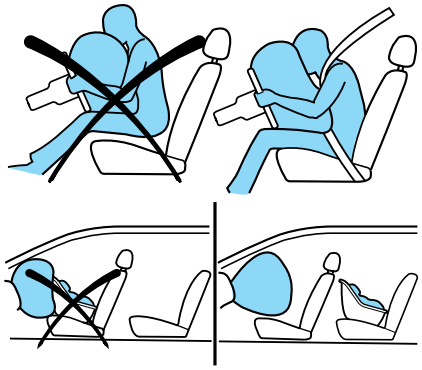
AIR BAG SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM (SRS)



DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Important SRS precautions

The SRS is designed to work with the safety belt to help protect the driver and right front passenger from certain upper body injuries. Air bags DO NOT inflate slowly; there is a risk of injury from a deploying air bag.



All occupants of the vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their safety belts, even when an air bag supplemental restraint system (SRS) is provided.

Always transport children 12 years old and under in the back seat and always properly use appropriate child restraints.

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) recommends a minimum distance of at least 10 inches (25 cm) between an occupant's chest and the driver air bag module.

Never place your arm over the air bag module as a deploying air bag can result in serious arm fractures or other injuries.

To properly position yourself away from the air bag:

- Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.
- Recline the seat slightly one or two degrees from the upright position.

Do not put anything on or over the air bag module. Placing objects on or over the air bag inflation area may cause those objects to be propelled by the air bag into your face and torso causing serious injury.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the air bag supplemental restraint systems or its fuses. See your Ford or Lincoln/Mercury dealer.

The front passenger air bag is not designed to offer protection to an occupant in the center front seating position.

Modifying or adding equipment to the front end of the vehicle (including frame, bumper, front end body structure and tow hooks) may affect the performance of the air bag system, increasing the risk of injury. Do not modify the front end of the vehicle.

Additional equipment such as snowplow equipment may effect the performance of the air bag sensors increasing the risk of injury. Please refer to the *Body Builders Layout Book* for instructions about the appropriate installation of additional equipment.

Removing the blocker beam without installing snow plow attachment hardware may effect air bag deployment in a crash. Do not operate the truck unless either the blocker beam or snow plow attachment hardware is installed on the vehicle.

Children and air bags

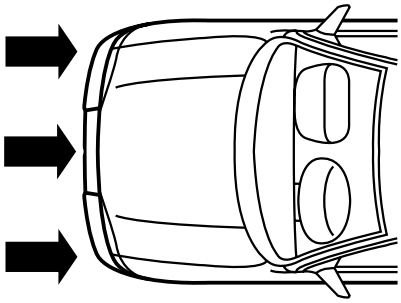
For additional important safety information, read all information on safety restraints in this guide.

Children must always be properly restrained. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of injury in a collision.

An infant in a rear-facing seat faces a high risk of serious or fatal injuries from a deploying passenger air bag. Rear facing infant seats should NEVER be placed in the front seats, unless the passenger air bag is turned off. See *Passenger air bag ON/OFF switch.*

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

How does the air bag supplemental restraint system work?



The air bag SRS is designed to activate when the vehicle sustains sufficient longitudinal deceleration. The fact that the air bags did not inflate in a collision does not mean that something is wrong with the system. Rather, it means the forces were not of the type sufficient to cause activation. Air bags are designed to inflate in frontal and near-frontal collisions, not rollover, side-impact, or rear-impacts.

The air bags inflate and deflate rapidly upon activation. After air bag deployment, it is normal to notice a smoke-like, powdery residue or smell the burnt propellant. This may consist of cornstarch, talcum powder (to lubricate the bag) or sodium compounds (e.g., baking soda) that result from the combustion process that inflates the air bag. Small amounts of sodium hydroxide may be present which may irritate the skin and eyes, but none of the residue is toxic.

While the system is designed to help reduce serious injuries, it may also cause minor abrasions, swelling or temporary hearing loss. Because air bags must inflate rapidly and with considerable force, there is the risk of death or serious injuries such as fractures, facial and eye injuries or internal injuries, particularly to occupants who are not properly restrained or are otherwise out of position at the time of air bag deployment. Thus, it is extremely important that occupants be properly restrained as far away from the air bag module as possible while maintaining vehicle control.

Several air bag system components get hot after inflation. Do not touch them after inflation.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

If the air bag has deployed, **the air bag will not function again and must be replaced immediately.** If the air bag is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury in a collision.

The SRS consists of:

- driver and passenger air bag modules (which include the inflators and air bags),
- one or more impact and safing sensors,
- a readiness light and tone
- and the electrical wiring which connects the components.

The diagnostic module monitors its own internal circuits and the supplemental air bag electrical system wiring (including the impact sensors), the system wiring, the air bag system readiness light, the air bag back up power and the air bag ignitors.

Determining if the system is operational

The SRS uses a readiness light in the instrument cluster or a tone to indicate the condition of the system. Refer to *Air bag readiness* section in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter. Routine maintenance of the air bag is not required.

A difficulty with the system is indicated by one or more of the following:

- The readiness light will either flash or stay lit.
- The readiness light will not illuminate immediately after ignition is turned on.

- A series of five beeps will be heard. The tone pattern will repeat periodically until the problem and/or light are repaired.

If any of these things happen, even intermittently, have the SRS serviced at your dealership or by a qualified technician immediately. Unless serviced, the system may not function properly in the event of a collision.

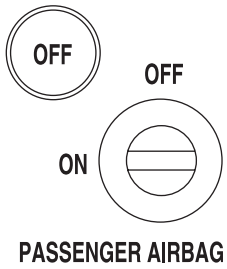
Disposal of air bags and air bag equipped vehicles

See your local dealership or qualified technician. Air bags MUST BE disposed of by qualified personnel.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

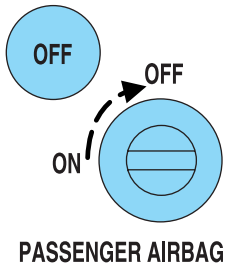
Passenger air bag ON/OFF switch (if equipped)

An air bag ON/OFF switch has been installed in this vehicle. Before driving, *always* look at the face of the switch to be sure the switch is in the proper position in accordance with these instructions and warnings. Failure to put the switch in a proper position can increase the risk of serious injury or death in a collision.



Turning the passenger air bag off

1. Insert the ignition key, turn the switch to OFF position and hold in OFF position while removing the key.
2. When the ignition is turned to the ON position the OFF light illuminates briefly, momentarily shuts off and then turns back on. This indicates that the passenger air bag is deactivated.



If the light fails to illuminate when the passenger air bag switch is in the OFF position and the ignition switch is in ON, have the passenger air bag switch serviced at your Ford or Lincoln-Mercury dealer immediately.

In order to avoid inadvertent activation of the switch, always remove the ignition key from the passenger air bag ON/OFF switch.

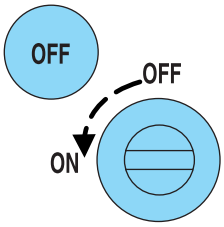
An infant in a rear-facing seat faces a high risk of serious or fatal injuries from a deploying passenger air bag. Rear facing infant seats should NEVER be placed in the front seats, unless the passenger air bag is turned off.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Turning the passenger air bag back on

The passenger air bag remains OFF until you turn it back ON.

1. Insert the ignition key and turn the switch to ON.
2. The OFF light will briefly illuminate when the ignition is turned to On. This indicates that the passenger air bag is operational.



PASSENGER AIRBAG

If the OFF light is illuminated when the passenger air bag switch is in the ON position and the ignition switch is in ON, have the passenger air bag switch serviced at your Ford or Lincoln/Mercury dealer immediately.

The passenger side air bag should always be ON (the air bag OFF light should *not* be illuminated) unless the passenger is a person who meets the requirements stated either in Category 1, 2 or 3 of the NHTSA/Transport Canada deactivation criteria which follows.

The safety belts for the driver and right front passenger seating positions have been specifically designed to function together with the air bags in certain types of crashes. When you turn OFF your air bag, you not only lose the protection of the air bag, you also may reduce the effectiveness of your safety belt system, which was designed to work with the air bag. If you are not a person who meets the requirements stated in the NHTSA/Transport Canada deactivation criteria turning OFF the air bag can increase the risk of serious injury or death in a collision.

If your vehicle has rear seats, always transport children who are 12 and younger in the rear seat. Always use safety belts and child restraints properly. If a child in a rear facing infant seat must be transported in front, the passenger air bag *must* be turned OFF. This is because the back of the infant seat is too close to the inflating air bag and the risk of a fatal injury to the infant when the air bag inflates is substantial.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

The vast majority of drivers and passengers are much safer with an air bag than without. To do their job and reduce the risk of life threatening injuries, air bags must open with great force, and this force can pose a potentially deadly risk in some situations, particularly when a front seat occupant is not properly buckled up. The most effective way to reduce the risk of unnecessary air bag injuries without reducing the overall safety of the vehicle is to make sure all occupants are properly restrained in the vehicle, especially in the front seat. This provides the protection of safety belts and permits the air bags to provide the additional protection they were designed to provide. If you choose to deactivate your air bag, you are losing the very significant risk reducing benefits of the air bag and you are also reducing the effectiveness of the safety belts, because safety belts in modern vehicles are designed to work as a safety system with the air bags.

Read all air bag warning labels in the vehicle as well as the other important air bag instructions and warnings in this Owner's Guide.

NHTSA deactivation criteria (excluding Canada)

1. **Infant.** An infant (less than 1 year old) must ride in the front seat because:

- the vehicle has no rear seat;
- the vehicle has a rear seat too small to accommodate a rear-facing infant seat; or
- the infant has a medical condition which, according to the infant's physician, makes it necessary for the infant to ride in the front so that the driver can constantly monitor the child's condition.

2. **Child age 1 to 12.** A child age 1 to 12 must ride in the front seat because:

- the vehicle has no rear seat;
- although children ages 1 to 12 ride in the rear seat(s) whenever possible, children ages 1 to 12 sometimes must ride in the front because no space is available in the rear seat(s) of the vehicle; or
- the child has a medical condition which, according to the child's physician, makes it necessary for the child to ride in the front seat so that the driver can constantly monitor the child's condition.

3. **Medical condition.** A passenger has a medical condition which, according to his or her physician:

- causes the passenger air bag to pose a special risk for the passenger; and

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

- makes the potential harm from the passenger air bag in a crash greater than the potential harm from turning OFF the air bag and allowing the passenger, even if belted, to hit the dashboard or windshield in a crash.

This vehicle has special energy management safety belts for the driver and right front passenger. These particular belts are specifically designed to work with air bags to help reduce the risk of injury in a collision. The energy management safety belt is designed to give or release additional belt webbing in some accidents to reduce concentration of force on an occupant's chest and reduce the risk of certain bone fractures and injuries to underlying organs. In a crash, if the air bag is turned OFF, this energy management safety belt might permit the person wearing the belt to move forward enough to incur a serious or fatal injury. The more severe the crash, and the heavier the occupant, the greater the risk is. Be sure the air bag is turned ON for any person who does not qualify under the NHTSA deactivation criteria.

Transport Canada deactivation criteria (Canada Only)

1. **Infant:** An infant (less than 1 year old) must ride in the front seat because:

- my vehicle has no rear seat;
- the rear seat in my vehicle cannot accommodate a rear-facing infant seat; or
- the infant has a medical condition which, according to the infant's physician, makes it necessary for the infant to ride in the front seat so that the driver can monitor the infant's condition.

2. **Child age 12 or under:** A child age 12 or under must ride in the front seat because:

- my vehicle has no rear seat;
- although children age 12 and under ride in the rear seat whenever possible, children age 12 and under have no option but to sometimes ride in the front seat because rear seat space is insufficient; or
- the child has a medical condition that, according to the child's physician, makes it necessary for the child to ride in the front seat so that the driver can monitor the child's condition.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

3. **Medical condition:** A passenger has a medical condition that, according to his or her physician:

- poses a special risk for the passenger if the air bag deploys; and
- makes the potential harm from the passenger air bag deployment greater than the potential harm from turning OFF the air bag and experiencing a crash without the protection offered by the air bag

This vehicle has special energy management safety belts for the driver and right front passenger. These particular belts are specifically designed to work with air bags to help reduce the risk of injury in a collision. The energy management safety belt is designed to give or release additional belt webbing in some accidents to reduce concentration of force on an occupant's chest and reduce the risk of certain bone fractures and injuries to underlying organs. In a crash, if the air bag is turned OFF, this energy management safety belt might permit the person wearing the belt to move forward enough to incur a serious or fatal injury. The more severe the crash, and the heavier the occupant, the greater the risk is. Be sure the air bag is turned ON for any person who does not qualify under the NHTSA deactivation criteria.

SAFETY RESTRAINTS FOR CHILDREN

See the following sections for directions on how to properly use safety restraints for children. Also see *Air bag supplemental restraint system (SRS)* in this chapter for special instructions about using air bags.

Important child restraint precautions

You are required by law to use safety restraints for children in the U.S. and Canada. If small children (generally children who are four years old or younger and who weigh 40 lb. [18 kg] or less) ride in your vehicle, you must put them in safety seats made especially for children. Many states require that children use approved booster seats until they are eight years old. Check your local and state or provincial laws for specific requirements regarding the safety of children in your vehicle. When possible, always place children under age 12 in the rear seat of your vehicle. Accident statistics suggest that children are safer when properly restrained in the rear seating positions than in the front seating position.

Never let a passenger hold a child on his or her lap while the vehicle is moving. The passenger cannot protect the child from injury in a collision.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Always follow the instructions and warnings that come with any infant or child restraint you might use.

Children and safety belts

If the child is the proper size, restrain the child in a safety seat. Children who are too large for child safety seats (as specified by your child safety seat manufacturer) should always wear safety belts.

Follow all the important safety restraint and air bag precautions that apply to adult passengers in your vehicle.

If the shoulder belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt can be positioned so it does not cross or rest in front of the child's face or neck, the child should wear the lap and shoulder belt. Moving the child closer to the center of the vehicle may help provide a good shoulder belt fit.

Do not leave children, unreliable adults, or pets unattended in your vehicle.

Child booster seats

Children outgrow a typical convertible or toddler seat when they weigh 40 lb. (18 kg) and are around 4 years of age. Although the lap/shoulder belt will provide some protection, these children are still too small for lap/shoulder belts to fit properly, which could increase the risk of serious injury.

To improve the fit of both the lap and shoulder belt on children who have outgrown child safety seats, Ford Motor Company recommends use of a belt-positioning booster.

Booster seats position a child so that safety belts fit better. They lift the child up so that the lap belt rests low across the hips and the knees bend comfortably. Booster seats also make the shoulder belt fit better and more comfortably for growing children.

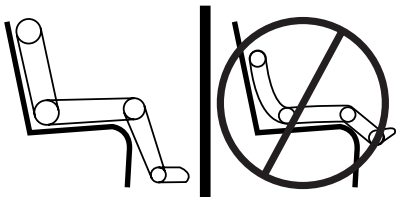
When children should use booster seats

Children need to use booster seats from the time they outgrow the toddler seat until they are big enough for the vehicle seat and lap/shoulder belt to fit properly. Generally this is when they weigh about 80 lb. (36 kg) (about 8 to 12 years old).

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Booster seats should be used until you can answer YES to ALL of these questions:

- Can the child sit all the way back against the vehicle seat back with knees bent comfortably at the edge of the seat without slouching?



- Does the lap belt rest low across the hips?
- Is the shoulder belt centered on the shoulder and chest?
- Can the child stay seated like this for the whole trip?

Types of booster seats

There are two types of belt-positioning booster seats:

- Those that are backless.

  If your backless booster seat has a removable shield, remove the shield and use the lap/shoulder belt. If a seating position has a low seat back and no head restraint, a backless booster seat may place your child's head (top of ear level) above the top of the seat. In this case, move the backless booster to another seating position with a higher seat back and lap/shoulder belts.

- Those with a high back.

  If, with a backless booster seat, you cannot find a seating position that adequately supports your child's head, a high back booster seat would be a better choice.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Both can be used in any vehicle in a seating position equipped with lap/shoulder belts if your child is over 40 lb. (18 kg).

The shoulder belt should cross the chest, resting snugly on the center of the shoulder. The lap belt should rest low and snug across the hips, never up high across the stomach.

If the booster seat slides on the vehicle seat, placing a rubberized mesh sold as shelf or carpet liner under the booster seat may improve this condition.

The importance of shoulder belts

Using a booster without a shoulder belt increases the risk of a child's head hitting a hard surface in a collision. For this reason, you should never use a booster seat with a lap belt only. It is best to use a booster seat with lap/shoulder belts in the back seat- the safest place for children to ride.

Follow all instructions provided by the manufacturer of the booster seat.

Never put the shoulder belt under a child's arm or behind the back because it eliminates the protection for the upper part of the body and may increase the risk of injury or death in a collision.

Never use pillows, books, or towels to boost a child. They can slide around and increase the likelihood of injury or death in a collision.

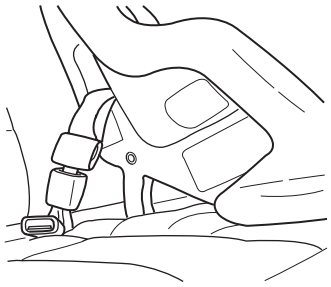
SAFETY SEATS FOR CHILDREN

Child and infant or child safety seats

Use a safety seat that is recommended for the size and weight of the child. Carefully follow all of the manufacturer's instructions with the safety seat you put in your vehicle. If you do not install and use the safety seat properly, the child may be injured in a sudden stop or collision.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

When installing a child safety seat:



- Review and follow the information presented in the *Air bag supplemental restraint system* (SRS) section in this chapter.
- Use the correct safety belt buckle for that seating position (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from).
- Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle until you hear a snap and feel it latch. Make sure the tongue is securely fastened in the buckle.
- Keep the buckle release button pointing up and away from the safety seat, with the tongue between the child seat and the release button, to prevent accidental unbuckling.
- Place seat back in upright position.
- Put the safety belt in the automatic locking mode. Refer to *Automatic locking mode* (passenger side front and outboard rear seating positions) (if equipped) section in this chapter.
- LATCH lower anchors are recommended for use by children up to 48 pounds (22 kg) in a child restraint. Top tether anchors can be used for children up to 60 pounds (27 kg) in a child restraint, and to provide upper torso restraint for children up to 80 pounds (36 kg) using an upper torso harness and a belt-positioning booster.

Ford recommends the use of a child safety seat having a top tether strap. Install the child safety seat in a seating position with a tether anchor. For more information on top tether straps and anchors, refer to *Attaching safety seats with tether straps* in this chapter.

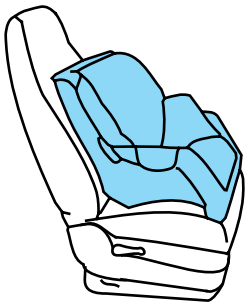
Carefully follow all of the manufacturer's instructions included with the safety seat you put in your vehicle. If you do not install and use the safety seat properly, the child may be injured in a sudden stop or collision.

Rear-facing child seats or infant carriers should never be placed in the front seats, unless the passenger airbag On/Off switch is turned off. See *Passenger airbag ON/OFF switch* in this chapter.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Installing child safety seats with combination lap and shoulder belts

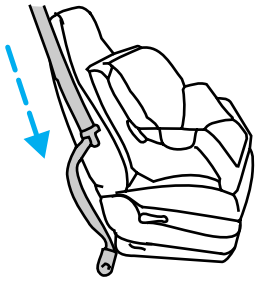
1. Position the child safety seat in a seat with a combination lap and shoulder belt.



An air bag can kill or injure a child in a child seat. Child seats should NEVER be placed in the front seats, unless the passenger air bag switch is turned off, See *Passenger air bag on/off switch*.

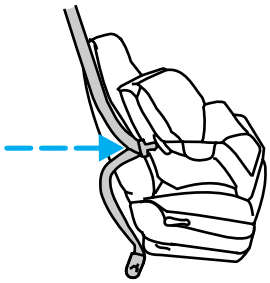
Rear facing child seats should NEVER be placed in the front seats unless the passenger airbag switch is turned off.

2. Pull down on the shoulder belt and then grasp the shoulder belt and lap belt together.

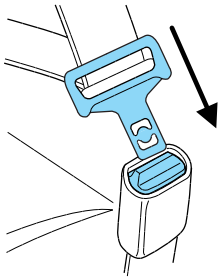


DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

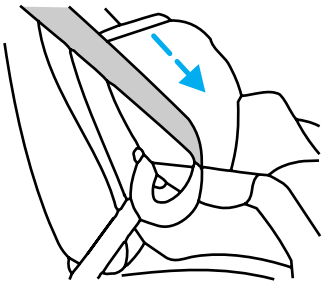
3. While holding the shoulder and lap belt portions together, route the tongue through the child seat according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions. Be sure the belt webbing is not twisted.



4. Insert the belt tongue into the proper buckle (the buckle closest to the direction the tongue is coming from) for that seating position until you hear and feel the latch engage. Make sure the tongue is latched securely by pulling on it.



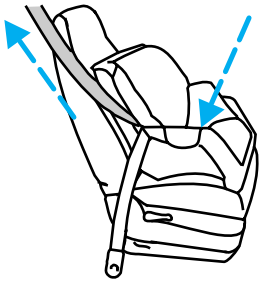
5. To put the retractor in the automatic locking mode, grasp the shoulder portion of the belt and pull downward until all of the belt is extracted and a click is heard.



6. Allow the belt to retract. The belt will click as it retracts to indicate it is in the automatic locking mode.

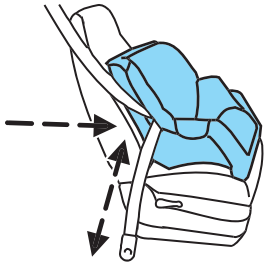
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

7. Pull the lap belt portion across the child seat toward the buckle and pull up on the shoulder belt while pushing down with knee on the child seat.



8. Allow the safety belt to retract to remove any slack in the belt.

9. Before placing the child in the seat, forcibly tilt the seat forward and back to make sure the seat is securely held in place. To check this, grab the seat at the belt path and attempt to move it side to side and forward. There should be no more than one inch of movement for proper installation.



10. Try to pull the belt out of the retractor to make sure the retractor is in the automatic locking mode (you should not be able to pull more belt out). If the retractor is not locked, unbuckle the belt and repeat Steps two through nine.

Check to make sure the child seat is properly secured before each use.

Attaching child safety seats with tether straps

Most new forward-facing child safety seats include a tether strap which goes over the back of the seat and hooks to an anchoring point. Tether straps are available as an accessory for many older safety seats. Contact the manufacturer of your child seat for information about ordering a tether strap.

The passenger seats of your vehicle may be equipped with built-in tether strap anchors located behind the seats as described below.

The tether anchors in your vehicle may be straps on the seatback or an anchor bracket on the rear edge of the seat cushion or an anchor bracket mounted to the body shell on the back panel.

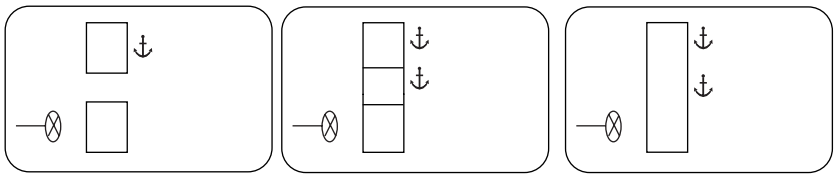
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

The SuperCab rear seat has three straps behind the top of the seat back that function as both routing loops for the tether straps and anchor loops.

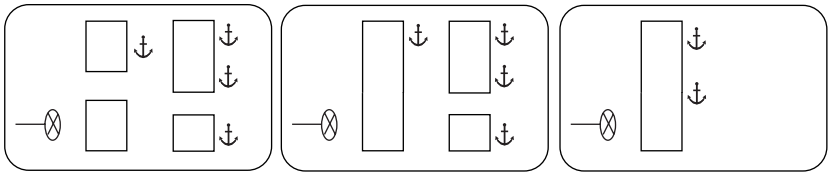
The tether strap anchors in your vehicle are in the following positions (shown from top view):

Attach the tether strap only to the appropriate tether anchor as shown. The tether strap may not work properly if attached somewhere other than the correct tether anchor.

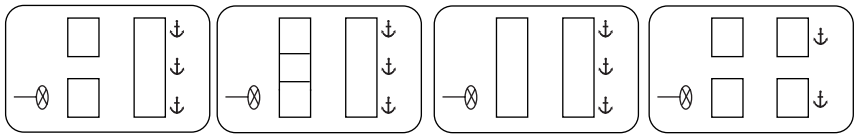
- **F—Series Regular Cab**



- **F—Series SuperCab**



- **F—Series Crew Cab**



Tether strap attachment

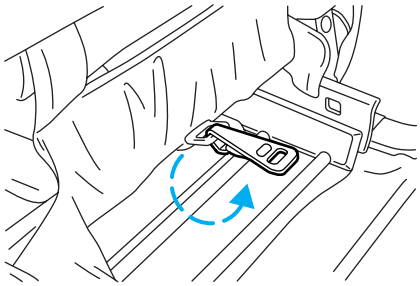
1. Position the child safety seat on the seat cushion.
2. Route the child safety seat tether strap over the back of the seat.
3. Locate the correct anchor for the selected seating position.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

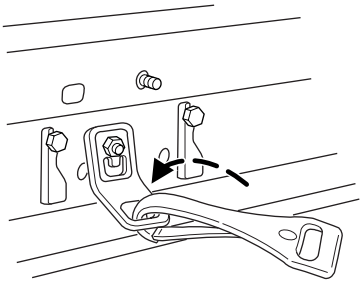
4. You may need to pull the seatback forward to access the tether anchors. Make sure the seat is locked in the upright position before installing the child seat. Refer to the *Rear folding seat system with load floor* section in this chapter for information on how to operate the rear seats.

5. Clip the tether strap to the anchor as shown.

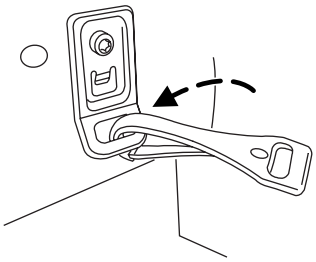
- Front seat (SuperCab only)



- Front seats (Regular Cab)



- Rear seats (Crew Cab only)



If the tether strap is clipped incorrectly, the child safety seat may not be retained properly in the event of a collision.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

6. Refer to the *Installing child safety seats in combination lap and shoulder belt seating positions* section of this chapter for further instructions to secure the child safety seat.

7. Tighten the child safety seat tether strap according to the manufacturer's instructions.

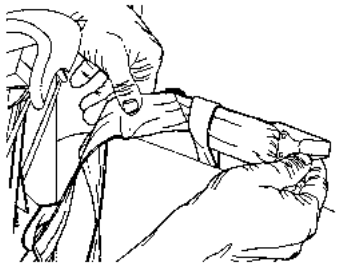
If the safety seat is not anchored properly, the risk of a child being injured in a collision greatly increases.

Tether strap attachment (rear SuperCab only)

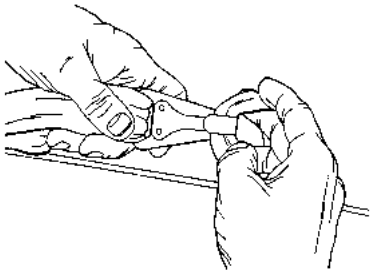
There are three loops of webbing just above the back of the rear seat (along the bottom edge of the rear window) in the SuperCab. These loops are to be used as both routing loops and anchor loops for up to three child safety seat tether straps.

Many tether straps cannot be tightened if the tether strap is hooked to the loop directly behind the child seat. To provide a tight tether strap:

1. Route the tether strap through the loop directly behind the child seat.



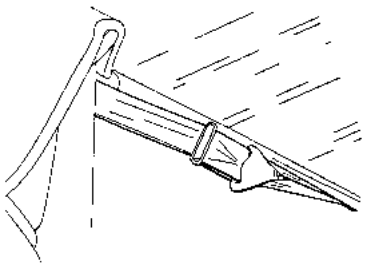
2. Attach the strap hook onto the loop behind an adjacent seating position.



DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

3. Install the child safety seat tightly using the vehicle belts. Follow the instructions in this chapter.

4. Tighten the tether strap according to the child seat manufacturer's instructions.

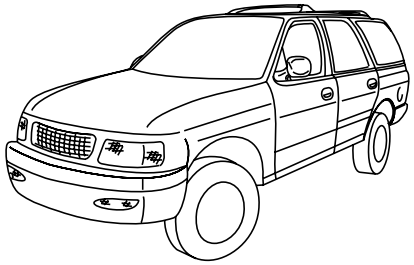


A single loop can be used to route and anchor more than one child seat. For example, the center loop can be used as a routing loop for a child safety seat in the center rear seat and as an anchoring loop for child seats installed in the outboard rear seats.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

NOTICE TO UTILITY VEHICLE AND TRUCK OWNERS

Utility vehicles and trucks handle differently than passenger cars in the various driving conditions that are encountered on streets, highways and off-road. Utility vehicles and trucks are not designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions.



Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. To reduce the risk of serious injury or death from a rollover or other crash you must:

- Avoid sharp turns and abrupt maneuvers;
- Drive at safe speeds for the conditions;
- Keep tires properly inflated;
- Never overload or improperly load your vehicle; and
- Make sure every passenger is properly restrained.

In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. All occupants must wear safety belts and children/infants must use appropriate restraints to minimize the risk of injury or ejection.

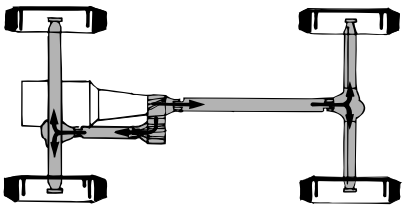
Study your *Owner's Guide* and any supplements for specific information about equipment features, instructions for safe driving and additional precautions to reduce the risk of an accident or serious injury.

VEHICLE CHARACTERISTICS

4WD and AWD Systems (if equipped)

A vehicle equipped with AWD or 4WD (when you select the 4WD mode) has the ability to use all four wheels to power itself. This increases traction which may enable you to safely drive over terrain and road conditions that a conventional two-wheel drive vehicle cannot.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

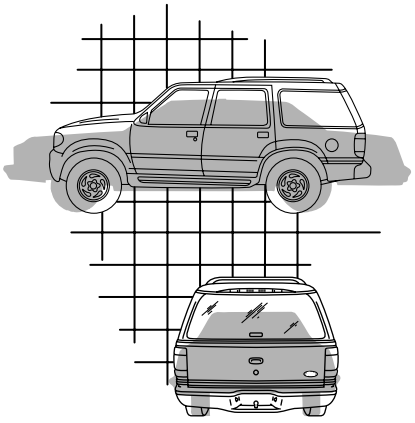


Power is supplied to all four wheels through a transfer case or power transfer unit. 4WD vehicles allow you to select different drive modes as necessary. Information on shifting procedures and maintenance can be found in your *Owner's Guide*. You should become thoroughly familiar with this information before you operate your vehicle.

On some 4WD models, the initial shift from two-wheel drive to 4WD while the vehicle is moving can cause a momentary clunk and ratcheting sound. These sounds are normal as the front drivetrain comes up to speed and is not cause for concern.

Do not become overconfident in the ability of 4WD and AWD vehicles. Although a 4WD or AWD vehicle may accelerate better than two-wheel drive vehicle in low traction situations, it won't stop any faster than two-wheel drive vehicles. Always drive at a safe speed.

How your vehicle differs from other vehicles

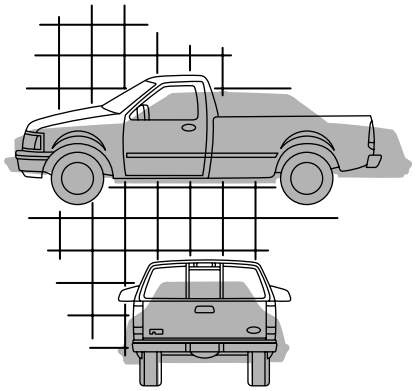


SUV and trucks can differ from some other vehicles in a few noticeable ways. Your vehicle may be:

- Higher – to allow higher load carrying capacity and to allow it to travel over rough terrain without getting hung up or damaging underbody components.
- Shorter – to give it the capability to approach inclines and drive over the crest of a hill without getting hung up or damaging underbody components. All other things held equal, a shorter wheelbase may make your vehicle quicker to respond to steering inputs than a vehicle with a longer wheelbase.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

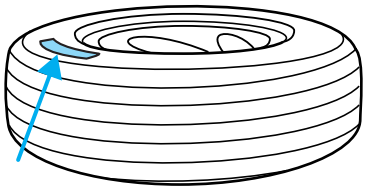
- Narrower — to provide greater maneuverability in tight spaces, particularly in off-road use.



As a result of the above dimensional differences, SUV's and trucks often will have a higher center of gravity and a greater difference in center of gravity between the loaded and unloaded condition.

These differences that make your vehicle so versatile also make it handle differently than an ordinary passenger car.

INFORMATION ABOUT UNIFORM TIRE QUALITY GRADING



New vehicles are fitted with tires that have a rating on them called Tire Quality Grades. The Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between tread shoulder and maximum section width. For example:

- **Treadwear 200 Traction AA Temperature A**

These Tire Quality Grades are determined by standards that the United States Department of Transportation has set.

Tire Quality Grades apply to new pneumatic tires for use on passenger cars. They do not apply to deep tread, winter-type snow tires, space-saver or temporary use spare tires, tires with nominal rim diameters of 10 to 12 inches or limited production tires as defined in Title 49 Code of Federal Regulations Part 575.104(c)(2).

U.S. Department of Transportation-Tire quality grades: The U.S. Department of Transportation requires Ford to give you the following information about tire grades exactly as the government has written it.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Treadwear

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices, and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction AA A B C

The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.

Temperature A B C

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

TIRES

Tires are designed to give many thousands of miles of service, but they must be maintained in order to get the maximum benefit from them.

Glossary of tire terminology

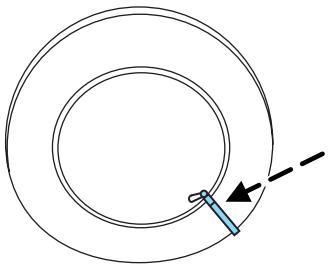
- **Tire label:** A label showing the OE (Original Equipment) tire sizes, recommended inflation pressure and the maximum weight the vehicle can carry.
- **Tire Identification Number (TIN):** A number on the sidewall of each tire providing information about the tire brand and manufacturing plant, tire size and date of manufacture.
- **Inflation pressure:** A measure of the amount of air in a tire.
- **Standard load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a maximum load at 35 psi [37 psi (2.5 bar) for Metric tires]. Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.
- **Extra load:** A class of P-metric or Metric tires designed to carry a heavier maximum load at 41 psi [43 psi (2.9 bar) for Metric tires]. Increasing the inflation pressure beyond this pressure will not increase the tire's load carrying capability.
- **kPa:** Kilopascal, a metric unit of air pressure.
- **PSI:** Pounds per square inch, a standard unit of air pressure.
- **Cold inflation pressure:** The tire pressure when the vehicle has been stationary and out of direct sunlight for an hour or more and prior to the vehicle being driven for 1 mile (1.6 km).
- **Recommended inflation pressure:** The cold inflation pressure found on the tire label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door.
- **B-pillar:** The structural member at the side of the vehicle behind the front door.
- **Bead area of the tire:** Area of the tire next to the rim.
- **Sidewall of the tire:** Area between the bead area and the tread.
- **Tread area of the tire:** Area of the perimeter of the tire that contacts the road when mounted on the vehicle.
- **Rim:** The metal support (wheel) for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

INSPECTING AND INFLATING YOUR TIRES

Safe operation of your vehicle requires that your tires are properly inflated. Remember that a tire can lose up to half of its air pressure without appearing flat.

Every day before you drive, check your tires. If one looks lower than the others, use a tire gauge to check pressure of all tires and adjust if required.



At least once a month and before long trips, inspect each tire and check the tire pressure with a tire gauge (including spare, if equipped). Inflate all tires to the inflation pressure recommended by Ford Motor Company.

Inspecting your tires

Periodically inspect the tire treads for uneven or excessive wear and remove stones, nails, glass or other objects that may be wedged in the tread grooves. Check for holes or cuts that may permit air leakage from the tire and make necessary repairs.

Also inspect the tire sidewalls for cuts, bruises and other damage. If internal damage to the tire is suspected, have the tire demounted and inspected in case it needs to be repaired or replaced. For your safety, tires that are damaged should not be used because they are more likely to blow out or fail. Tires can be damaged during off-road use, so inspection after off-road use is also recommended.

Inflating your tires

Use a tire gauge to check the tire inflation pressure, including the spare (if equipped), at least monthly and before long trips. You are strongly urged to buy a reliable tire pressure gauge, as automatic service station gauges may be inaccurate. Ford recommends the use of a digital or dial type tire pressure gauge rather than a stick type tire pressure gauge.

Use the recommended cold inflation pressure for optimum tire performance and wear. Under-inflation or over-inflation may cause uneven treadwear patterns.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Under-inflation is the most common cause of tire failures and may result in severe tire cracking, tread separation or ″blowout″, with unexpected loss of vehicle control and increased risk of injury. Under-inflation increases sidewall flexing and rolling resistance, resulting in heat buildup and internal damage to the tire. It also may result in unnecessary tire stress, irregular wear, loss of vehicle control and accidents. A tire can lose up to half of its air pressure and not appear to be flat!

Always inflate your tires to the Ford recommended inflation pressure even if it is less than the maximum inflation pressure information found on the tire. The Ford recommended tire inflation pressure is found on the tire label or certification label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. Failure to follow the tire pressure recommendations can cause uneven treadwear patterns and adversely affect the way your vehicle handles.

Maximum Permissible Inflation Pressure is the tire manufactures' maximum permissible pressure and/or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure which can be found on either the tire label or certification label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the tire label or certification label.

When weather temperature changes occur, tire inflation pressures also change. A 10° F (6° C) temperature drop can cause a corresponding drop of 1 psi (7 kPa) in inflation pressure. Check your tire pressures frequently and adjust them to the proper pressure which can be found on the tire label or certification label.

If you are checking tire pressure when the tire is hot, (i.e. driven more than 1 mile [1.6 km]), never “bleed” or reduce air pressure. The tires are hot from driving and it is normal for pressures to increase above recommended cold pressures. A hot tire at or below recommended cold inflation pressure could be significantly under-inflated.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

To check the pressure in your tire(s):

1. Make sure the tires are cool, meaning they are not hot from driving even a mile.

Note: If you have to drive a distance to get air for your tire(s), check and record the tire pressure first and add the appropriate air pressure when you get to the pump. It is normal for tires to heat up and the air pressure inside to go up as you drive. Never “bleed” or reduce air pressure when tires are hot.

2. Remove the cap from the valve on one tire, then firmly press the tire gauge onto the valve and measure the pressure with the tire gauge.

3. Add enough air to reach the recommended air pressure

Note: If you overfill the tire, release air by pushing on the metal stem in the center of the valve. Then recheck the pressure with your tire gauge.

4. Replace the valve cap.

5. Repeat this procedure for each tire, including the spare.

Note: Some spare tires require higher inflation pressure than the other tires. Check the tire label on the B pillar or the edge of the driver’s door for the recommended spare tire pressure.

6. Visually inspect the tires to make sure there are no nails or other objects embedded that could poke a hole in the tire and cause an air leak.

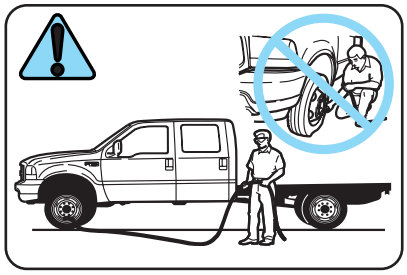
7. Check the sidewalls to make sure there are no gouges, cuts or bulges.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Tire inflation information

All tires with Steel Carcass Plies (if equipped):

This type of tire utilizes steel cords in the sidewalls. As such, they cannot be treated like normal light truck tires. Tire service, including adjusting tire pressure, must be performed by personnel trained, supervised and equipped according to Federal Occupational Safety and Health Administration (OSHA) regulations. For example, during any procedure involving tire inflation, the technician or individual must utilize a remote inflation device, and ensure that all persons are clear of the trajectory area.



WARNING An inflated tire and rim can be very dangerous if improperly used, serviced or maintained. To avoid serious injury, never attempt to re-inflate a tire which has been run flat or seriously under-inflated without first removing the tire from the wheel assembly for inspection. Do not attempt to add air to tires or replace tires or wheels without first taking precautions to protect persons and property.

TIRE REPLACEMENT REQUIREMENTS

Your vehicle is equipped with tires designed to provide a safe ride and handling capability.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Only use replacement tires and wheels that are the same size and type (such as P-metric versus LT-metric or all-season versus all-terrain) as those originally provided by Ford. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. Additionally the use of non-recommended tires and wheels could cause steering, suspension, axle or transfer case/power transfer unit failure. If you have questions regarding tire replacement, see an authorized Ford or Lincoln/Mercury dealer.

Make sure all tires and wheels on the vehicle are of the same size, type, tread design, brand, load-carrying capacity and speed rating because it can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. In some cases your vehicle may come with different tires or wheels on the front and rear. They may differ in size or tread pattern. In this case it is important to follow the rules above in replacing the tires and wheels at the front or rear of your vehicle.

You should replace the spare tire when you replace the other road tires due to the aging of the spare tire.

CHANGING A FLAT TIRE

If you get a flat tire while driving:

- do not brake heavily.
- gradually decrease the vehicle's speed.
- hold the steering wheel firmly.
- slowly move to a safe place on the side of the road.

The use of tire sealants may damage your tires.

T-Type/Mini-Spare Tire Information (Harley Davidson only)

Your vehicle may be equipped with a temporary spare tire. This spare tire is considered "temporary". Replace the temporary spare with a tire of the same size, speed rating, and load carrying capacity as the other road tires as soon as possible.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

When driving with the temporary spare tire **do not:**

- Exceed 50 mph (80 km/h)
- Load the vehicle beyond maximum vehicle load rating listed on the Safety Compliance Label
- Tow a trailer
- Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the temporary spare tire
- Use more than one temporary spare tire at a time

Use of a temporary spare tire at any one wheel location can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance
- Comfort and noise
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs
- Winter weather driving capability
- Wet weather driving capability

Dissimilar spare tire/wheel information (if equipped)

Failure to follow these guidelines could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, injury or death.

Your vehicle may be equipped with a dissimilar spare tire/wheel. A dissimilar spare tire/wheel is defined as a spare tire and/or wheel that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels. If you have a dissimilar spare tire/wheel, then it is intended for temporary use only. This means that if you need to use it, you should replace it as soon as possible with a road tire/wheel that is the same size and type as the road tires and wheels that were originally provided by Ford. If the dissimilar spare tire or wheel is damaged, it should be replaced rather than repaired.

When driving with the dissimilar spare tire/wheel, **do not:**

- Exceed 70 mph (113 km/h)
- Use more than one dissimilar spare tire/wheel at a time
- Use commercial car washing equipment
- Use snow chains on the end of the vehicle with the dissimilar spare tire/wheel

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

The usage of a dissimilar spare tire/wheel can lead to impairment of the following:

- Handling, stability and braking performance
- Comfort and noise
- Ground clearance and parking at curbs
- Winter weather driving capability
- Wet weather driving capability
- All-Wheel driving capability (if applicable)
- Load leveling adjustment (if applicable)

When driving with the dissimilar spare tire/wheel additional caution should be given to:

- Towing a trailer
- Driving vehicles equipped with a camper body
- Driving vehicles with a load on the cargo rack

Drive cautiously when using a dissimilar spare tire/wheel and seek service as soon as possible.

Location of the spare tire and tools

If your vehicle is equipped with a spare tire, jack and associated tools, refer to the following table for their locations:

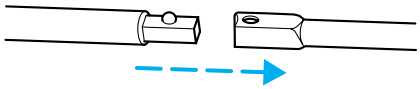
Tool	Location
Spare tire (pick-up trucks only)	Under the vehicle, just forward of the rear bumper
Jack	Regular cab, Super Cab without rear bench seat and Crew Cab: Fastened to floor pan behind rearmost seat on passenger side SuperCab with rear bench seat: Under rear bench on passenger side
Jack handle and lug wrench	Regular cab: Fastened to floor behind front seat Super Cab: Fastened to floor under rear seat Crew Cab: Fastened to floor behind rear seat
Key, spare tire lock	In the glove box

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

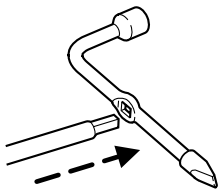
Removing the spare tire (with spare tire carrier only)

1. The following tools are required to remove the spare tire:

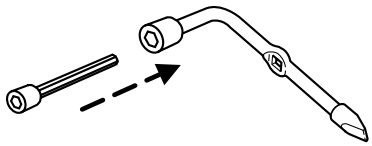
- one handle extension and one typical extension. To assemble, align button with hole and slide parts together. To disconnect, depress button and pull apart.



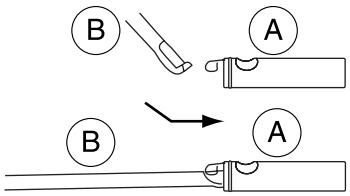
- one wheel nut wrench. Slide over square end of jack handle.



- **Vehicles equipped with dual rear wheels,** insert the lug wrench extension into the lug wrench to reach the lug nuts.

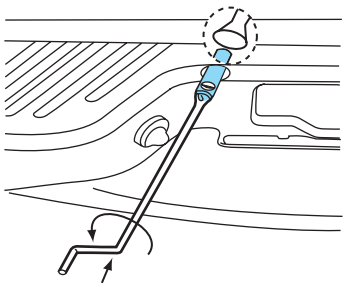


2. Attach the spare tire lock key (A) to the jack handle (B).



DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

3. Fully insert the jack handle through the bumper hole and into the guide tube. The key and lock will engage with a slight push and counterclockwise turn. Some resistance will be felt when turning the jack handle assembly.



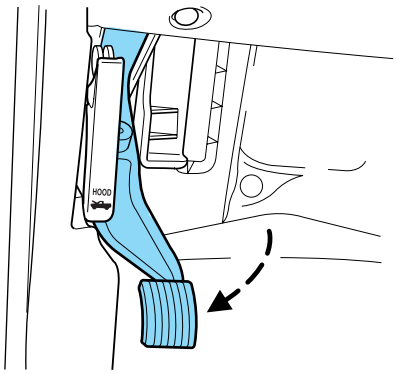
4. Turn the handle counterclockwise and lower the spare tire until you can slide the tire rearward and the cable is slack.

5. Remove the retainer through the center of the wheel.

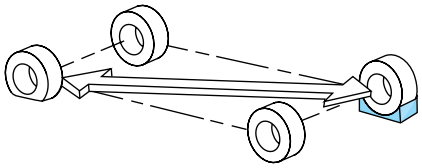
Tire change procedure

1. Park on a level surface, activate hazard flashers and set the parking brake.

- Automatic transmission: Place gearshift lever in P (Park).
- Manual transmission: Place gearshift lever in R (Reverse).
- Electronic Shift-On-the-Fly (ESOF) 4WD: Place transfer case in any position.
- Manual shift transfer case 4WD: Place transfer case in 2H, 4H or 4L.



To help prevent the vehicle from moving when you change a tire, be sure the parking brake is set, then block (in both directions) the wheel that is diagonally opposite (other side and end of the vehicle) to the tire being changed.



2. Turn engine off and block the diagonally opposite wheel (block not provided).

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

3. Remove the jack, jack handle, lug wrench and spare tire from the stowage locations.

4. Use the tip of the lug wrench to remove any wheel trim.

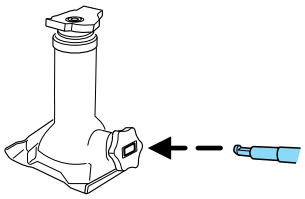
5. Loosen each wheel lug nut one-half turn counterclockwise but do not remove them until the wheel is raised off the ground.

When one of the rear wheels is off the ground, the transmission alone will not prevent the vehicle from moving or slipping off the jack, even if the transmission is in P (Park) (automatic transmission) or R (Reverse) (manual transmission). To prevent the vehicle from moving when you change the tire, be sure that the parking brake is set and the diagonally opposite wheel is blocked.

If the vehicle slips off the jack, you or someone else could be seriously injured.

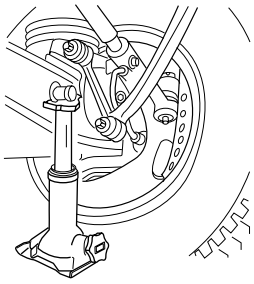
The following steps apply to F–250/F–350 Single Rear Wheel (SRW) vehicles only (unless otherwise noted):

6. Insert the hooked end of the jack handle into the jack and use the handle to slide the jack under the vehicle.



7. Position the jack according to the following guides:

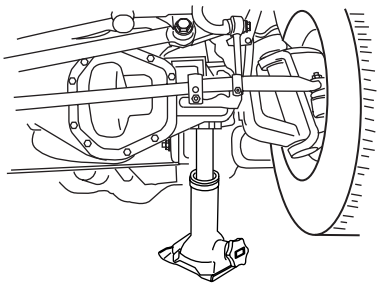
- Front (4x2)



DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

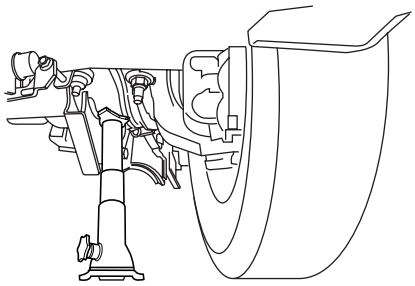
- Front driver side (4x4)

Note: Make sure the jack fits onto the flat area on the outboard side of the differential.

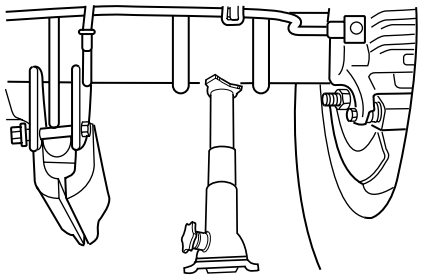


- Front passenger side (4x4)

Note: View shown from the rear of the vehicle to clearly identify the jack point. Place the jack directly under the axle.

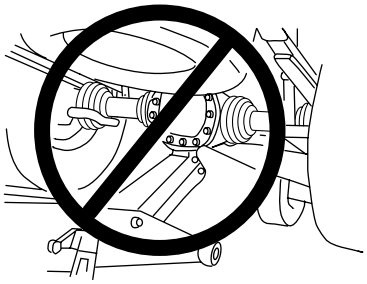


- Rear (including F-350 Dual Rear wheel [DRW] vehicles)



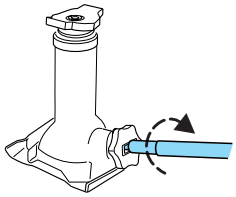
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Never use the front or rear differential as a jacking point.



To lessen the risk of personal injury, do not put any part of your body under the vehicle while changing a tire. Do not start the engine when your vehicle is on the jack. The jack is only meant for changing the tire.

8. Turn the jack handle clockwise until the wheel is completely off the ground and high enough to install the spare tire.



9. Remove the lug nuts with the lug wrench.

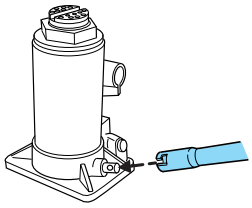
10. Replace the flat tire with the spare tire, making sure the valve stem is facing outward for all front wheels and single rear wheel vehicles. If replacing an inboard rear tire on dual rear wheel vehicles, the valve stem must be facing outward. If replacing the outboard wheel, the valve stem must be facing inward. Reinstall the lug nuts until the wheel is snug against the hub. Do not fully tighten the lug nuts until the wheel has been lowered.

11. Lower the wheel by turning the jack handle counterclockwise.

Go to step 19.

The following steps apply to F–350 DRW and F–450/F–550 vehicles only:

12. Slide the notched end of the jack handle over the release valve and use the handle to slide the jack under the vehicle. Make sure the valve is closed by turning it clockwise.

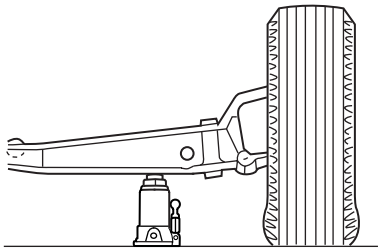


DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

13. Position the jack according to the following guides:

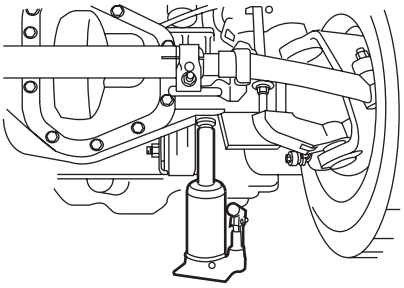
- Front (4x2): F–350 DRW

Note: Place jack directly under I-beam.



- Front driver side (4x4): F–350 DRW

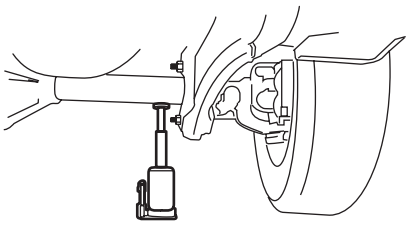
Note: Make sure the jack fits onto the flat area on the outboard side of the differential housing.



- Front passenger side (4x4): F-350 DRW

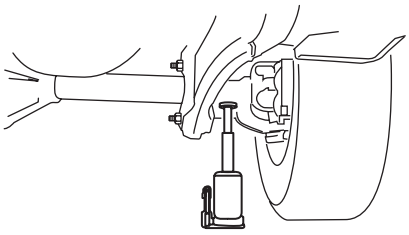
Note: View shown from the rear of the vehicle to clearly identify the jack point.

Note: Place the jack directly under axle and inboard of the radius arm so that the jack clears the radius arm.

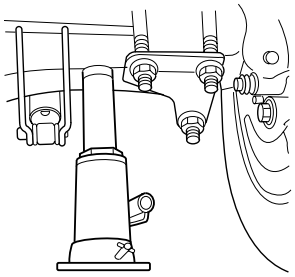


DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

- Front: F–450/F–550

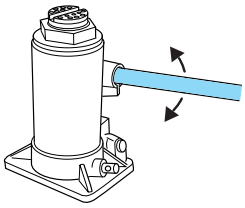


- Rear: F-450/F-550



14. Insert the jack handle into the pump linkage.

15. Use an up-and-down motion with the jack handle to raise the wheel completely off the ground.



Hydraulic jacks are equipped with a pressure release valve that prevents lifting loads which exceed the jack's rated capacity.

16. Remove the lug nuts with the lug wrench.

17. Replace the flat tire with the spare tire, making sure the valve stem is facing outward on all front an inboard rear wheels. If replacing the outboard wheel, the valve stem must be facing inward. Reinstall the lug nuts until the wheel is snug against the hub. Do not fully tighten the lug nuts until the wheel has been lowered.

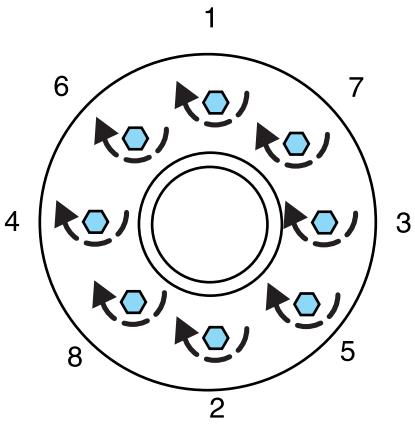
18. Lower the wheel by slowly turning the release valve counterclockwise. Opening the release valve slowly will provide a more controlled rate of descent.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

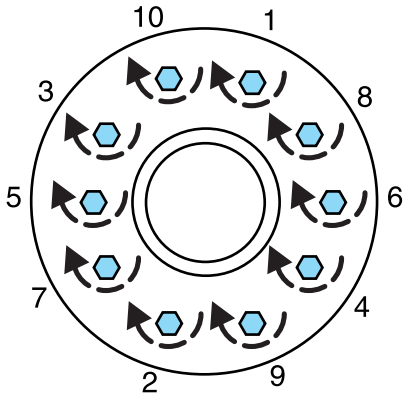
The following steps apply to all vehicles:

19. Remove the jack and fully tighten the lug nuts in the order shown. Refer to *Wheel lug nut torque specifications* later in this chapter for the proper lug nut torque specification.

8–lug nut torque sequence



10–lug nut torque sequence



20. Stow the flat tire. Refer to *Stowing the spare tire* if the vehicle is equipped with a spare tire carrier.

Note: Do not stow Harley-Davidson flat tire and wheel using the spare tire winch mechanism; store the flat in the bed of the truck.

21. Stow the jack, jack handle and lug wrench. Make sure the jack is securely fastened so it does not rattle when driving.

22. Unblock the wheels.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Stowing the flat/spare tire

Note: Failure to follow spare tire stowage instructions may result in failure of cable or loss of spare tire.

1. Lay the tire on the ground with the valve stem facing in the direction specified on the Tire Changing Instructions located with the jack hardware.

2. Slide the wheel partially under the vehicle and install the retainer through the wheel center. Pull on the cable to align the components at the end of the cable.

3. Turn the jack handle clockwise until the tire is raised to its stowed position underneath the vehicle. The effort to turn the jack handle increases significantly and the spare tire carrier ratchets or slips when the tire is raised to the maximum tightness. Tighten to the best of your ability, to the point where the ratchet/slip occurs, if possible. The spare tire carrier will not allow you to overtighten. If the spare tire carrier ratchets or slips with little effort, take the vehicle to your dealer for assistance at your earliest convenience.

4. Check that the tire lies flat against the frame and is properly tightened. Try to push or pull, then turn the tire to be sure it will not move. Loosen and retighten, if necessary. Failure to properly stow the spare tire may result in failure of the winch cable and loss of the tire.

5. Repeat this tightness check procedure when servicing the spare tire pressure (every six months, per *Scheduled Maintenance Guide),* or at any time that the spare tire is disturbed through service of other components.

6. If removed, install the spare tire lock (if equipped) into the bumper drive tube with the spare tire lock key (if equipped) and jack handle.

WHEEL LUG NUT TORQUE SPECIFICATIONS

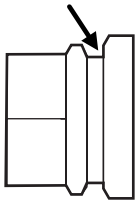
On vehicles equipped with single rear wheels, retighten the lug nuts to the specified torque at 500 miles (800 km) after any wheel disturbance (tire rotation, changing a flat tire, wheel removal, etc.).

On vehicles equipped with dual rear wheels, retighten the wheel lug nuts to the specified torque at 100 miles (160 km), and again at 500 miles (800 km) of new vehicle operation and after any wheel disturbance (tire rotation, changing a flat tire, wheel removal, etc.).

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Bolt size	Wheel lug nut torque*	
	lb.ft.	N•m
M14 x 1.5	150	200
* Torque specifications are for nut and bolt threads free of dirt and rust. Use only Ford recommended replacement fasteners.		

On all two-piece flat wheel nuts, apply one drop of motor oil between the flat washer and the nut. Do not apply motor oil to the wheel nut threads or the wheel stud threads.



When a wheel is installed, always remove any corrosion, dirt or foreign materials present on the mounting surfaces of the wheel or the surface of the front disc brake hub and rotor that contacts the wheel. Installing wheels without correct metal-to-metal contact at the wheel mounting surfaces can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel to come off while the vehicle is in motion, resulting in loss of control.

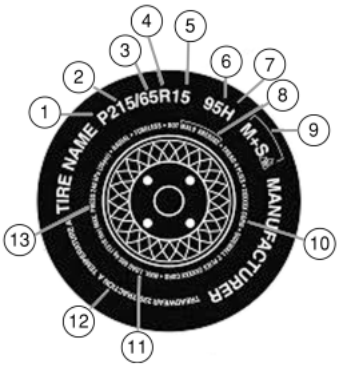
INFORMATION CONTAINED ON THE TIRE SIDEWALL

Federal law requires tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics of the tire and also provides a U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Information on “P” type tires

P215/65R15 95H is an example of a tire size, load index and speed rating. The definitions of these items are listed below. (Note that the tire size, load index and speed rating for your vehicle may be different from this example.)



1. **P:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association (T&RA), that may be used for service on cars, SUVs, minivans and light trucks.

Note: If your tire size does not begin with a letter this may mean it is designated by either ETRTO (European Tire and Rim Technical Organization) or JATMA (Japan Tire Manufacturing Association).

2. **215:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

3. **65:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire’s ratio of height to width.

4. **R:** Indicates a “radial” type tire.

5. **15:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

6. **95:** Indicates the tire’s load index. It is an index that relates to how much weight a tire can carry. You may find this information in your *Owner’s Guide*. If not, contact a local tire dealer.

Note: You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.

7. **H:** Indicates the tire’s speed rating. The speed rating denotes the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time under a standard condition of load and inflation pressure. The tires on your vehicle may operate at different conditions for load and inflation pressure. These speed ratings may need to be adjusted for the difference in conditions. The ratings range from 81 mph (130 km/h) to 186 mph (299 km/h). These ratings are listed in the following chart.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Note: You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by federal law.

Letter rating	Speed rating - mph (km/h)
M	81 mph (130 km/h)
N	87 mph (140 km/h)
Q	99 mph (159 km/h)
R	106 mph (171 km/h)
S	112 mph (180 km/h)
T	118 mph (190 km/h)
U	124 mph (200 km/h)
H	130 mph (210 km/h)
V	149 mph (240 km/h)
W	168 mph (270 km/h)
Y	186 mph (299 km/h)
Note: For tires with a maximum speed capability over 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the letters ZR. For those with a maximum speed capability over 186 mph (299 km/h), tire manufacturers always use the letters ZR.	

8. **U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN):** This begins with the letters “DOT” and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters are the plant code designating where it was manufactured, the next two are the tire size code and the last four numbers represent the week and year the tire was built. For example, the numbers 317 mean the 31st week of 1997. After 2000 the numbers go to four digits. For example, 2501 means the 25th week of 2001. The numbers in between are identification codes used for traceability. This information is used to contact customers if a tire defect requires a recall.

9. **M+S or M/S:** Mud and Snow, or
AT: All Terrain, or
AS: All Season.

10. **Tire Ply Composition and Material Used:** Indicates the number of plies or the number of layers of rubber-coated fabric in the tire tread and sidewall. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the ply materials in the tire and the sidewall, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others.

11. **Maximum Load:** Indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire. Refer to the tire label or the safety certification label, which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver’s door, for the correct tire pressure for your vehicle.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

12. **Treadwear, Traction and Temperature Grades**

- **Treadwear:** The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1½) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.
- **Traction:** The traction grades, from highest to lowest are AA, A, B, and C. The grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.
- **Temperature:** The temperature grades are A (the highest), B and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

13. **Maximum Permissible Inflation Pressure:** Indicates the tire manufacturers' maximum permissible pressure and/or the pressure at which the maximum load can be carried by the tire. This pressure is normally higher than the manufacturer's recommended cold inflation pressure which can be found on either the tire label or certification label which is located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The cold inflation pressure should never be set lower than the recommended pressure on the vehicle label.

The tire suppliers may have additional markings, notes or warnings such as standard load, radial tubeless, etc.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Additional information contained on the tire sidewall for "LT" type tires

"LT" type tires have some additional information beyond those of "P" type tires; these differences are described below:

1. **LT:** Indicates a tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association (T&RA), that is intended for service on light trucks.

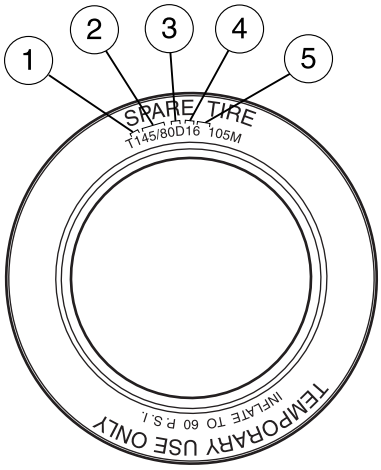
2. **Load Range/Load Inflation Limits:** Indicates the tire's load-carrying capabilities and its inflation limits.

3. **Maximum Load Dual lb. (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a dual; defined as four tires on the rear axle (a total of six or more tires on the vehicle).

4. **Maximum Load Single lb. (kg) at psi (kPa) cold:** Indicates the maximum load and tire pressure when the tire is used as a single; defined as two tires (total) on the rear axle.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Information on “T” type tires



“T” type tires have some additional information beyond those of “P” type tires; these differences are described below:

T145/80D16 is an example of a tire size.

Note: The temporary tire size for your vehicle may be different from this example.

1. **T:** Indicates a type of tire, designated by the Tire and Rim Association (T&RA), that is intended for temporary service on cars, SUVs, minivans and light trucks.

2. **145:** Indicates the nominal width of the tire in millimeters from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire.

3. **80:** Indicates the aspect ratio which gives the tire’s ratio of height to width. Numbers of 70 or lower indicate a short sidewall.

4. **D:** Indicates a “diagonal” type tire.
R: Indicates a “radial” type tire.

5. **16:** Indicates the wheel or rim diameter in inches. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new wheel diameter.

Location of the tire label

You will find a tire label containing tire inflation pressure by tire size and other important information located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver’s door. Refer to the payload description and graphic in the *Vehicle loading — with and without a trailer* section.

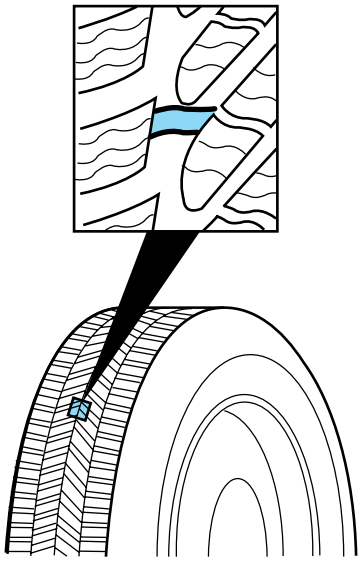
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

TIRE CARE

Improper or inadequate vehicle maintenance can also cause tires to wear abnormally. Here are some of the important maintenance items:

Tire wear

Measure and inspect the tire tread on all your tires periodically. Advanced and unusual tire wear can reduce the ability of tread to grip the road in adverse (wet, snowy, etc.) conditions. Visually check your tires for uneven wear, looking for high and low areas or unusually smooth areas. Also check for signs of tire damage.



When the tread is worn down to 1/16th of an inch (2 mm), tires must be replaced to prevent your vehicle from skidding and hydroplaning. Built-in treadwear indicators, or “wear bars”, which look like narrow strips of smooth rubber across the tread will appear on the tire when the tread is worn down to 1/16th of an inch (2 mm). When the tire tread wears down to the same height as these “wear bars”, the tire is worn out and should be replaced.

Inspect your tires frequently for any of the following conditions and replace them if one or more of the following conditions exist:

- Fabric showing through the tire rubber
- Bulges in the tread or sidewalls
- Cracks or cuts on the sidewalls
- Cracks in the tread groove
- Impact damage resulting from use
- Separation in the tread
- Separation in the sidewall
- Severe abrasion on the sidewall

If your vehicle has a leak in the exhaust system, a road tire or the spare tire may be exposed to hot exhaust temperatures requiring the tire to be replaced.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Safety practices

Driving habits have a great deal to do with your tire mileage and safety.

- Observe posted speed limits
- Avoid fast starts, stops and turns
- Avoid potholes and objects on the road
- Do not run over curbs or hit the tire against a curb when parking

If your vehicle is stuck in snow, mud, sand, etc., **do not** rapidly spin the tires; spinning the tires can tear the tire and cause an explosion. A tire can explode in as little as three to five seconds.

Never spin the tires in excess of the 35 mph (55 km/h) point indicated on the speedometer.

Highway hazards

No matter how carefully you drive there's always the possibility that you may eventually have a flat tire on the highway. Drive slowly to the closest safe area out of traffic. This may further damage the flat tire, but your safety is more important.

If you feel a sudden vibration or ride disturbance while driving, or you suspect your tire or vehicle has been damaged, immediately reduce your speed. Drive with caution until you can safely pull off the road. Stop and inspect the tires for damage. If a tire is under-inflated or damaged, deflate it, remove wheel and replace it with your spare tire and wheel. If you cannot detect a cause, have the vehicle towed to the nearest repair facility or tire dealer to have the vehicle inspected.

Tire and wheel alignment

A bad jolt from hitting a curb or pothole can cause the front end of your vehicle to become misaligned or cause damage to your tires. If your vehicle seems to pull to one side when you're driving, the wheels may be out of alignment. Have a qualified technician at a Ford or Lincoln/Mercury dealer check the wheel alignment periodically.

Wheel misalignment in the front or the rear can cause uneven and rapid treadwear of your tires and should be corrected by a qualified technician at a Ford or Lincoln/Mercury dealer. Front wheel drive (FWD) vehicles and those with an independent rear suspension (if equipped) may require alignment of all four wheels.

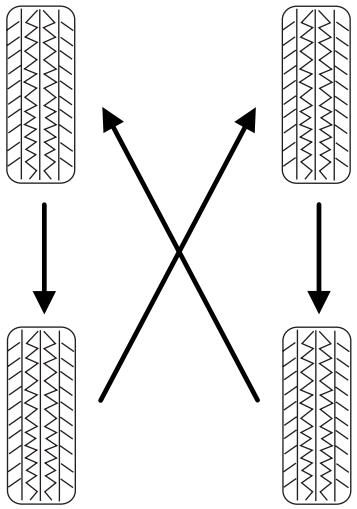
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

The tires should also be balanced periodically. An unbalanced tire and wheel assembly may result in irregular tire wear.

Tire rotation

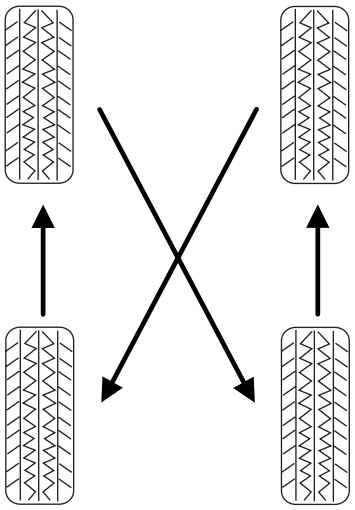
Rotating your tires at the recommended interval (as indicated in the scheduled maintenance information that comes with your vehicle) will help your tires wear more evenly, providing better tire performance and longer tire life. Unless otherwise specified, rotate the tires approximately every 5,000 miles (8,000 km).

- Front Wheel Drive (FWD) vehicles (front tires at top of diagram)



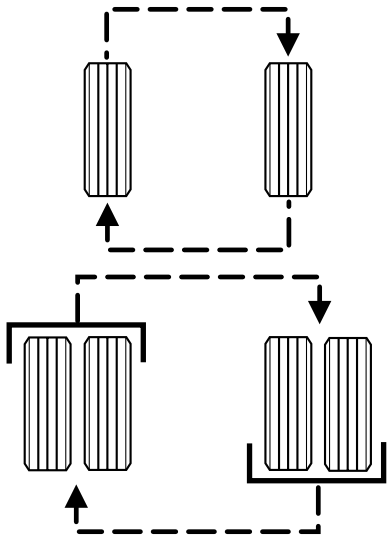
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

- Rear Wheel Drive (RWD) vehicles/Four Wheel Drive (4WD)/All—Wheel Drive (AWD) vehicles (front tires at top of diagram)



- DRW – Six tire rotation

If your vehicle is equipped with dual rear wheels it is recommended that front and rear tires (in pairs) be rotated only side to side, with the rear tires maintaining original vehicle position. After tire rotation, inflation pressures must be adjusted for the tires new positions in accordance with vehicle requirements.



DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Sometimes irregular tire wear can be corrected by rotating the tires.

Note: If your tires show uneven wear ask a qualified technician at a reputable repair facility to check for and correct any wheel misalignment, tire imbalance or mechanical problem involved before tire rotation.

Note: Your vehicle may be equipped with a dissimilar spare tire/wheel. A dissimilar spare tire/wheel is defined as a spare tire and/or wheel that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels. If you have a dissimilar spare tire/wheel it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.

Note: After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.

SNOW TIRES AND CHAINS

Snow tires must be the same size and grade as the tires you currently have on your vehicle.

Note: Do not use snow chains on front tires of Harley-Davidson vehicles.

The tires on your vehicle have all weather treads to provide traction in rain and snow. However, in some climates, you may need to use snow tires and chains. If you need to use chains, it is recommended that steel wheels (of the same size and specifications) be used, as chains may chip aluminum wheels.

Follow these guidelines when using snow tires and chains:

- Use only SAE Class S chains.
- Install chains securely, verifying that the chains do not touch any wiring, brake lines or fuel lines.
- Drive cautiously. If you hear the chains rub or bang against your vehicle, stop and re-tighten the chains. If this does not work, remove the chains to prevent damage to your vehicle.
- If possible, avoid fully loading your vehicle.
- Remove the tire chains when they are no longer needed. Do not use tire chains on dry roads.
- The suspension insulation and bumpers will help prevent vehicle damage. Do not remove these components from your vehicle when using snow tires and chains.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

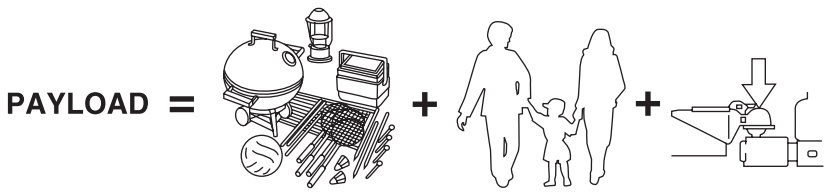
VEHICLE LOADING – WITH AND WITHOUT A TRAILER

This section will guide you in the proper loading of your vehicle and/or trailer, to keep your loaded vehicle weight within its design rating capability, with or without a trailer. Properly loading your vehicle will provide maximum return of vehicle design performance. Before loading your vehicle, familiarize yourself with the following terms for determining your vehicle's weight ratings, with or without a trailer, from the vehicle's Safety Certification Label and Tire Label:

Base Curb Weight – is the weight of the vehicle including a full tank of fuel and all standard equipment. It does not include passengers, cargo, or optional equipment.

Vehicle Curb Weight – is the weight of your new vehicle when you picked it up from your dealer plus any aftermarket equipment.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

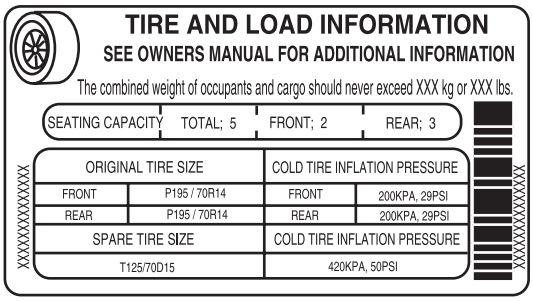


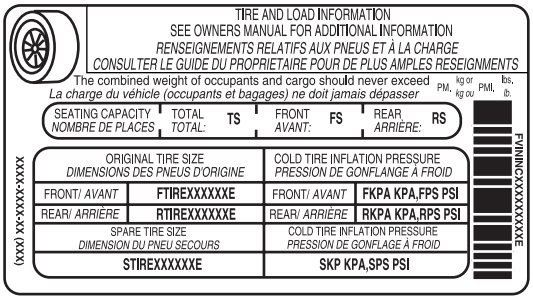
Payload – is the combined weight of cargo and passengers that the vehicle is carrying. The maximum payload for your vehicle can be found on the Tire Label on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. Look for **"THE COMBINED WEIGHT OF OCCUPANTS AND CARGO SHOULD NEVER EXCEED XXX kg OR XXX lb."** for maximum payload. The payload listed on the tire label is the maximum payload for the vehicle as built by the assembly plant. If any aftermarket or dealer installed equipment has been installed on the vehicle, the weight of the equipment must be subtracted from the payload listed on the tire label in order to determine the new payload.

The appropriate loading capacity of your vehicle can be limited either by volume capacity (how much space is available) or by payload capacity (how much weight the vehicle should carry). Once you have reached the maximum payload of your vehicle, do not add more cargo, even if there is space available. Overloading or improperly loading your vehicle can contribute to loss of vehicle control and vehicle rollover.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Example only:





Cargo Weight – includes all weight added to the Base Curb Weight, including cargo and optional equipment. When towing, trailer tongue load or king pin weight is also part of cargo weight.

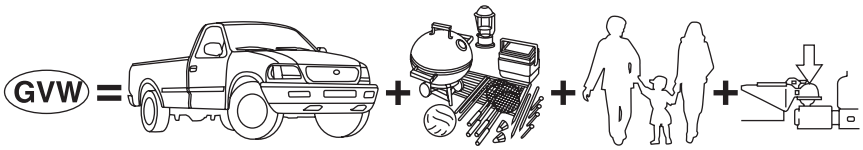
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

GAW (Gross Axle Weight) – is the total weight placed on each axle (front and rear) – including vehicle curb weight and all payload.

GAWR (Gross Axle Weight Rating) – is the maximum allowable weight that can be carried by a single axle (front or rear). **These numbers are shown on the Safety Compliance Certification Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The total load on each axle must never exceed its GAWR.**

Exceeding the Safety Certification Label axle weight rating limits could result in substandard vehicle handling or performance, engine, transmission and/or structural damage, serious damage to the vehicle, loss of control and personal injury.

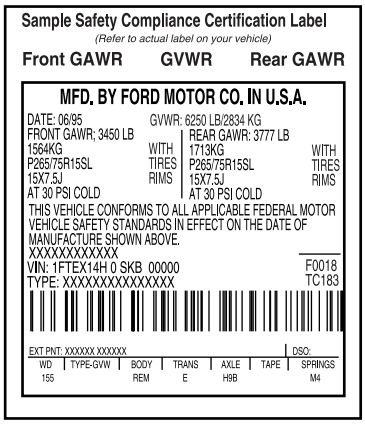
Note: For trailer towing information refer to *Trailer towing* found in this chapter or the *RV and Trailer Towing Guide* provided by your dealership.



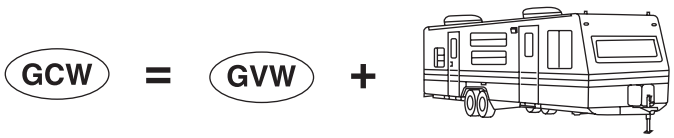
GVW (Gross Vehicle Weight) – is the Vehicle Curb Weight + cargo + passengers.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating) – is the maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle (including all options, equipment, passengers and cargo). **The GVWR is shown on the Safety Compliance Certification Label located on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver's door. The GVW must never exceed the GVWR.**



Exceeding the Safety Certification Label vehicle weight rating limits could result in substandard vehicle handling or performance, engine, transmission and/or structural damage, serious damage to the vehicle, loss of control and personal injury.



GCW (Gross Combined Weight) – is the weight of the loaded vehicle (GVW) plus the weight of the fully loaded trailer.

GCWR (Gross Combined Weight Rating) – is the maximum allowable weight of the vehicle and the loaded trailer – including all cargo and passengers – that the vehicle can handle without risking damage. (Important: The towing vehicles' braking system is rated for operation at GVWR, not at GCWR. Separate functional brakes should be used for safe control of towed vehicles and for trailers where the GCW of the towing vehicle plus the trailer exceed the GVWR of the towing vehicle. **The GCW must never exceed the GCWR.**

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Maximum Loaded Trailer Weight – is the highest possible weight of a fully loaded trailer the vehicle can tow. It assumes a vehicle with only mandatory options, no cargo (internal or external), a tongue load of 10–15% (conventional trailer) or king pin weight of 15–25% (fifth wheel trailer), and driver only (150 lb. [68 kg]). **Consult your dealership (or the** *RV and Trailer Towing Guide* **provided by your dealership) for more detailed information.**

Tongue Load or Fifth Wheel King Pin Weight – refers to the amount of the weight that a trailer pushes down on a trailer hitch.

Examples: For a 5,000 lb. (2,268 kg) conventional trailer, multiply 5,000 by 0.10 and 0.15 to obtain a proper tongue load range of 500 to 750 lb. (227 to 340 kg). For an 11,500 lb. (5,216 kg) fifth wheel trailer, multiply by 0.15 and 0.25 to obtain a proper king pin load range of 1,725 to 2,875 lb. (782 to 1,304 kg)

Do not exceed the GVWR or the GAWR specified on the certification label.

Do not use replacement tires with lower load carrying capacities than the originals because they may lower the vehicle's GVWR and GAWR limitations. Replacement tires with a higher limit than the originals do not increase the GVWR and GAWR limitations.

Exceeding any vehicle weight rating limitation could result in serious damage to the vehicle and/or personal injury.

Steps for determining the correct load limit:

1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lb." on your vehicle's placard.

2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.

3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lb.

4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1,400 lb. and there will be five 150 lb. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lb. (1400 – 750 (5 x 150) = 650 lb.). In metric units (635 – 340(5 x 68) = 295 kg.).

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

The following gives you a few examples on how to calculate the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity:

- An example for your vehicle with 1400 lb. (635 kg) of cargo and luggage capacity. You decide to go golfing. Is there enough load capacity to carry you, four of your friends and all the golf bags? You and four friends average 220 lb. (99 kg) each and the golf bags weigh approximately 30 lb. (13.5 kg) each. The calculation would be: 1400 – (5 x 220) – (5 x 30) = 1400 – 1100 – 150 = 150 lb.; yes, you have enough load capacity in your vehicle to transport you, four friends and your golf bags. In metric units, the calculation would be: 635 kg – (5 x 99) – (5 x 13.5) = 635 – 495 – 67.5 = 72.5 kg.
- Another example for your vehicle with 1400 lb. (635 kg) of cargo and luggage capacity. You and one of your friends decide to pick up cement from the local home improvement store to finish that patio you have been planning for the past 2 years. Measuring the inside of the vehicle with the rear seat folded down, you have room for 12-100 lb. (45 kg) bags of cement. Do you have enough load capacity to transport the cement to your home? If you and your friend each weigh 220 lb. (99 kg), the calculation would be: 1400 – (2 x 220) – (12 x 100) = 1400 – 440 – 1200 = – 240 lb.; no, you do not have enough cargo capacity to carry that much weight. In metric units, the calculation would be: 635 kg – (2 x 99) – (12 x 45) = 635 – 198 – 540 = –103 kg. You will need to reduce the load weight by at least 240 lb. (103 kg). If you remove 3-100 lb. (45 kg) cement bags, then the load calculation would be:

1400 – (2 x 220) – (9 x 100) = 1400 – 440 – 900 = 60 lb.; now you have the load capacity to transport the cement and your friend home. In metric units, the calculation would be: 635 kg – (2 x 99) – (9 x 45) = 635 – 198 – 405 = 32 kg.

The above calculations also assume that the loads are positioned in your vehicle in a manner that does not overload the Front or the Rear Gross Axle Weight Rating specified for your vehicle on the Certification label found on the edge of the driver's door.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Special loading instructions for owners of pickup trucks and utility-type vehicles

For important information regarding safe operation of this type of vehicle, see the *Preparing to drive your vehicle* section in the **Driving** chapter of this owner guide.

Loaded vehicles may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, should be taken when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

Your vehicle can haul more cargo and people than most passenger cars. Depending upon the type and placement of the load, hauling cargo and people may raise the center of gravity of the vehicle.

TRAILER TOWING

Your vehicle may tow a Conventional/Class IV trailer or fifth wheel trailer provided the maximum trailer weight is less than or equal to the maximum trailer weight listed for your engine and rear axle ratio on the following charts.

To calculate your maximum trailer weight:

for pickup trucks take curb weight, hitch hardware, and the driver's weight, and substract them from the GCWR listed for your vehice in the following chart/table given its series, engine, transmission and drive axle ration. This calculation will give you the maximum trailer weight possible for your vehicle.

for chassis cabs and pickup trucks with aftermarket equipment: weigh your vehicle at a certified scale and subtract this actual curb weight, hitch hardware, and the driver's weight from the GCWR listed for your vehicle in the following chart/table given its series, engine, transmission and drive axle ratio. This calculation will give you the maximum trailer weight possible for your vehicle.

The weight of all additional cargo, passengers and payload must be subtracted from the maximum trailer weight calculated above.

Further trailer/hitch restrictions and limitations exist depending on the type of trailer and hitch used. These additional maximum trailer weight and tongue load limitations are listed in the chart/table that follows the listing of GCWRs.

Towing a trailer places an additional load on your vehicle's engine, transmission, axle, brakes, tires and suspension. Inspect these

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

components carefully prior to and after any towing operation. Refer to *Transmission temperature gauge* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for the transmission fluid temperature information.

The following trailer towing charts apply to vehicles equipped with gasoline engines; for vehicles equipped with diesel engines, refer to your *6.0 Liter Power Stroke Direct Injection Turbo Diesel Owner's Guide Supplement*.

Note: Do not exceed the GCWR listed for your vehicle on the following chart/table, or the GVWR, GAWR or tire ratings specified on the Safety Compliance Certification Label.

Towing trailers beyond the maximum recommended trailer weight which exceeds the limit of the vehicle's GCWR, GVWR, GAWR or tire ratings could result in engine damage, transmission damage, structural damage, loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.

Maximum GCWR - lb. (kg.)			
Engine	**Rear axle ratio**	**Manual transmission**	**Automatic transmission**
F–250/F–350 Single Rear Wheel (SRW)			
5.4L	3.73	15000 (6804)	16000 (7257)
	4.10	17000 (7711)	18000 (8165)
6.8L	4.10	20000 (9072)	21000 (9525)
	4.30	22000 (9979)	22500 (10206)
F–350 Dual Rear Wheel (DRW)			
5.4L	3.73	15000 (6804)	16500 (7484)
	4.10	17500 (7938)	18500 (8391)
6.8L	4.10	20500 (9299)	21500 (9752)
	4.30	22500 (10206)	23000 (10433)
F–450/F–550			
6.8L	4.10/4.30	26000 (11793)	26000 (11793)

Preparing to tow

Use the proper equipment for towing a trailer and make sure it is properly attached to your vehicle. See your dealer or a reliable trailer dealer if you require assistance.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Hitches

Do not use hitches that clamp onto the vehicle's bumper or attach to the axle. You must distribute the load in your trailer so that 10%–15% for conventional towing or 15%-25% fifth-wheel towing of the total weight of the trailer is on the tongue.

Integrated hitch rating

The standard integrated hitch has two ratings depending on mode of operation:

- **Weight carrying** - requires a draw bar and hitch ball. The draw bar supports all the vertical tongue load of the trailer.
- **Weight distributing** - requires an aftermarket weight distributing system which includes draw bar, hitch ball, spring bars and snap-up brackets. The vertical tongue load of the trailer is distributed between the truck and the trailer by this system.

	Hitch Type	Maximum Gross Trailer Weight — lb. (kg)	Maximum Tongue Weight — lb. (kg)
6.8L DRW Pickup 2.5" ID without adapter (requires 2.5" drawbar)	Weight carrying	6000 (2721)	600 (272)
	Weight distributing	15000 (6804)	1500 (680)
6.8L DRW Pickup 2.5" ID with adapter (requires 2" drawbar)	Weight carrying	5000 (2268)	500 (227)
	Weight distributing	12500 (5670)	1250 (567)
All SRW Pickups and 5.4L DRW Pickups 2" receiver	Weight carrying	5000 (2268)	500 (227)
	Weight distributing	12500 (5670)	1250 (567)

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Towing trailers beyond the maximum tongue weight exceeds the limit of the towing system and could result in vehicle structural damage, loss of vehicle control and personal injury.

Load equalizing hitch

When hooking up a trailer using a load equalizing hitch, always use the following procedure:

1. Park the unloaded vehicle on a level surface. With the ignition on and all doors closed, allow the vehicle to stand for several minutes so that it can level.
2. Measure the height of a reference point on the front and rear bumpers at the center of the vehicle.
3. Attach the trailer to the vehicle and adjust the hitch equalizers so that the front bumper height is within ½" (13 mm) of the reference point. After proper adjustment, the rear bumper should be no higher than in Step 2.

Note: Adjusting an equalizing hitch so the rear bumper of the vehicle is higher than it was unloaded will defeat the function of the load equalizing hitch and may cause unpredictable handling.

Safety chains

Always connect the trailer's safety chains to the frame or hook retainers of the vehicle hitch. To connect the trailer's safety chains, cross the chains under the trailer tongue and allow slack for turning corners.

If you use a rental trailer, follow the instructions that the rental agency gives to you.

Do not attach safety chains to the bumper.

Trailer brakes

Electric brakes and manual, automatic or surge-type trailer brakes are safe if installed properly and adjusted to the manufacturer's specifications. The trailer brakes must meet local and Federal regulations.

If you own a trailer with a hydraulic brake system, do not connect the trailer's hydraulic brake system directly to your vehicle's brake system. The vehicle's brake system is only designed to carry the appropriate amount of brake fluid for the vehicle alone. Connecting a hydraulic trailer braking system could adversely affect your vehicle's braking performance.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

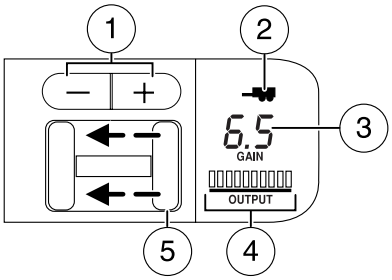
The braking system of the tow vehicle is rated for operation at the GVWR not GCWR.

Integrated trailer brake controller (if equipped)

Your vehicle may be equipped with a fully integrated electronic Trailer Brake Controller (TBC). When used properly, the TBC helps assure smooth and effective trailer braking by powering the trailer's electric brakes with a proportional output based on the towing vehicle's brake pressure.

The Ford TBC can only be used with trailers having electric-actuated drum brakes (one to four axles) and not hydraulic surge or electric-over-hydraulic types. It is the responsibility of the customer to ensure that the trailer brakes are adjusted appropriately, functioning normally and all electric connections are properly made.

The TBC user interface consists of the following:



1. **+/- (GAIN adjustment buttons):** Pressing these buttons will adjust the TBC's power output to the trailer brakes (in 0.5 increments). The GAIN setting can be increased to a maximum of 10.0 or decreased to a minimum of 0 (no trailer braking). Pressing and holding a button will raise or lower the setting continuously.
2. **Trailer connection indicator:** This lamp indicates trailer electrical connection status.

- When a successful trailer connection is detected, the indicator will be green.
- If the electrical connection is lost, the indicator will flash red. If the connection is lost while the vehicle is stationary, the indicator will turn off after 30 seconds. If the connection is lost while the vehicle is moving, the indicator will flash until the ignition is turned off, then on again.
- If no electrical connection is detected after the ignition is turned on, pressing a GAIN adjustment button will display the GAIN setting. Sliding the manual control will display the GAIN setting, OUTPUT bar graph and light the trailer indicator red.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

3. **GAIN setting display:** Shows the current GAIN setting. This will illuminate when a trailer is connected, flash if the trailer becomes disconnected, or remain off if no trailer is connected.

4. **OUTPUT bar graph:** When the vehicle's brake pedal is pushed, or when the manual control is activated, green bar indicators will illuminate to indicate the amount of power going to the trailer brakes relative to the brake pedal or manual control input.

5. **Manual control lever:** Slide the control lever to the left to activate power to the trailer's electric brakes independent of the tow vehicle's brakes (see the following *Procedure for adjusting GAIN* section for instructions on proper use of this feature). If the manual control is activated while the brake is also applied the greater of the two inputs determines the power sent to the trailer brakes.

- **Stop Lamps:** Activating the TBC manual control lever will illuminate both the trailer brake lamps and the tow vehicle brake lamps (presuming proper trailer electrical connection). Pressing the vehicle brake pedal will also illuminate both trailer and vehicle brake lamps.

GAIN

The GAIN setting is used to set the TBC for the specific towing condition and should be changed as towing conditions change. Changes to towing conditions include trailer load, vehicle load, road conditions and weather.

The GAIN should be set to provide the maximum trailer braking assistance while ensuring the trailer wheels do not lock when braking. Locked trailer wheels may lead to trailer instability.

Procedure for adjusting GAIN:

Note: This should only be performed in a traffic free environment at speeds of approximately 20 – 25 mph (30 – 40 km/h).

1. Make sure the trailer brakes are in good working condition, functioning normally, and properly adjusted. See your trailer dealer if necessary.

2. Hook-up the trailer and make the electrical connections according to the trailer manufacturer's instructions.

3. When a trailer with electric brakes is plugged in, the trailer connection indicator will illuminate green on the TBC and the GAIN setting display will illuminate.

4. Use the GAIN adjustment (+/-) buttons to increase or decrease the GAIN setting to the desired starting point. (A GAIN setting of 6.0 is a good starting point for heavier loads.)

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

5. In a traffic-free environment, tow the trailer on a dry, level surface at a speed of 20 – 25 mph (30 – 40 km/h) and squeeze the manual control lever completely.

6. If the trailer wheels lock-up (indicated by squealing tires), reduce the GAIN setting; if the trailer wheels turn freely, increase the GAIN setting. Repeat Steps 5 and 6 until the GAIN setting is at a point just below trailer wheel lock-up. If towing a heavier trailer, trailer wheel lockup may not be attainable even with the maximum GAIN setting of 10.

Explanation of instrument cluster messages:

The TBC interacts with the instrument cluster message center. These messages, accompanied by a single chime, will be displayed when the TBC determines a malfunction in the trailer connection, TBC system, or in the trailer. These messages are listed below:

TRAILER DISCONNECTED (if equipped with message center) or CHECK TRAILER (if equipped with mini message center): This message is displayed when a trailer connection was determined and then a disconnection, either intentionally or unintentionally, has been sensed during a given ignition cycle. This message is also displayed during manual activation without a trailer connected.

TBC FAULT: This message is displayed in response to faults sensed by the TBC. In the event this message is seen, please take your vehicle to an authorized Ford dealership for diagnosis and repair. The TBC may still function, but performance may be degraded.

TRAILER FAULT: The TBC is capable of determining certain faults in the vehicle wiring and trailer wiring/brake system. This message is displayed when one of the following faults has occurred:

- *Short circuit on the electric brake output wire:* If the TRAILER FAULT message is displayed with no trailer connected, the problem is with the vehicle wiring from the TBC to the 7–pin connector in the bumper. If the message is only displayed with a trailer connected, the problem is related to the trailer wiring; consult your trailer dealer for assistance.
- *Trailer brake overload:* The trailer brakes are drawing too much current; consult your trailer dealer for assistance.

Note: Your TBC can be diagnosed by your authorized Ford dealership to determine exactly which trailer fault has occurred; however, if the fault is with the trailer this diagnosis is **not** covered under your Ford warranty.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Points to Remember:

- Remember to adjust gain setting before using the TBC for the first time.
- Readjust GAIN setting on the TBC (according to procedure above) whenever road, weather and trailer or vehicle loading conditions change from those that existed when the gain was initially set.
- The sliding lever on the TBC should be used only for manual activation of trailer brakes to assist with proper adjustment of the GAIN. Misuse, such as application during trailer sway, could cause instability of trailer and/or tow vehicle.
- Avoid towing in adverse weather conditions. The TBC does not provide anti-lock control of the trailer wheels. Trailer wheels can lock-up on slippery surfaces, resulting in reduced stability of trailer and tow vehicle.
- The TBC interacts with the brake system of the vehicle, including ABS, in order to reduce the likelihood of trailer wheel lockup. Therefore, if these systems are not functioning properly the TBC may not function at full performance.
- When the vehicle is turned off, the TBC Output is disabled and the display is shut down. Reactivation of the ignition from OFF to RUN will awaken the TBC module.
- The TBC is only a factory installed item. Ford is not responsible for warranty or performance of the TBC due to misuse or out-of-factory installation.

Trailer lamps

Trailer lamps are required on most towed vehicles. Make sure all running lights, brake lights, turn signals and hazard lights are working. See your dealer or trailer rental agency for proper instructions and equipment for hooking up trailer lamps.

Using a step bumper (if equipped)

The rear bumper is equipped with an integral hitch and only requires a ball with a one inch (25.4 mm) shank diameter. The bumper has a 5,000 lb. (2,270 kg) trailer weight and 500 lb. (227 kg) tongue weight capacity.

If it is necessary to relocate the trailer hitch ball position, a frame-mounted trailer hitch must be installed.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Driving while you tow

When towing a trailer:

- Turn off the speed control. The speed control may shut off automatically when you are towing on long, steep grades.
- Consult your local motor vehicle speed regulations for towing a trailer.
- To eliminate excessive transmission shifting, activate the Tow/Haul feature. This will also assist in transmission cooling. (For additional information, refer to the *Understanding the positions of the 5–speed automatic transmission* section in this chapter.
- Anticipate stops and brake gradually.
- Do not exceed the GCWR rating or transmission damage may occur.
- Your vehicle may be equipped with a temporary or conventional spare tire. If the spare tire is different in size (diameter and/or width), tread type (All-Season or All-Terrain) or is from a different manufacturer other than the road tires on your vehicle, your spare tire is considered "temporary". Consult information on the spare tire label for limitations when using.

Servicing after towing

If you tow a trailer for long distances, your vehicle will require more frequent service intervals. Refer to your *Scheduled Maintenance Guide* for more information.

Trailer towing safety tips

General

- Ensure that the trailer, safety chains and 7 pin electrical connectors are securely fastened.
- Make sure the truck receiver, draw bar, and coupler are properly connected and adjusted.
- Check rear view and side mirrors for proper visibility especially when towing trailer wider than the truck.
- When towing, operate the vehicle at lower speeds than you would when not towing a trailer. The likelihood of trailer sway is greater at higher speeds.
- When turning make wide turns to allow trailer tires to properly clear any obstacles.
- Be prepared for trailer sway due to buffeting when larger vehicles pass in either direction.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Loading

- Keep the center-of-gravity low for best handling.
- Trailer loads should be evenly distributed front to back and left to right.
- The load distribution within the trailer should be such that 10% – 15% of the trailer weight is on the hitch. (15% – 25% for 5th-wheel or gooseneck towing.)
- Never exceed truck, trailer, receiver, ball, tongue, tire or coupler loading recommendations.

Braking

- The trailer brakes must be inspected and serviced at intervals specified by the manufacturer. This includes the shoes, drum and trailer brake magnets.
- Electric brakes also require periodic adjustment to keep the shoes properly spaced. If the brakes get hot when driving or if they will not hold, chances are that they need adjustment.
- Anticipate the need to stop; allow much more distance and time to stop than normal.
- Do not apply the trailer brakes for extended periods of time as they can overheat and lose effectiveness.

Backing up

- Practice backing up, particularly if you are a novice. Turn the steering wheel to the right to move the trailer's rear end to the right.
- Sharp steering movements may cause the trailer to jackknife or go out of control.

Tires

- All trailer tires should be of the same size, and construction.
- Select tires that meet the trailer loading requirements.
- Always check tow vehicle and trailer tire pressure before towing.

Launching or retrieving a boat

When backing down a ramp during boat launching or retrieval,

- Do not allow the static water level to rise above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.
- Do not allow waves to break higher than 6 inches (15 cm) above the bottom edge of the rear bumper.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

- Disconnect the trailer tow electrical connector to prevent blown fuses caused by water entering into your trailer's electrical wiring.

Exceeding these limits may allow water to enter critical vehicle components, adversely affecting driveability, emissions and reliability.

Replace front and rear axle lubricants any time the axles have been submerged in water. Axle lubricant quantities are not to be checked unless a leak is suspected.

RECREATIONAL TOWING

This applies to all 4x2 trucks with rear wheel drive capability.

An example of recreational towing is towing your vehicle behind a motorhome. The following recreational towing guidelines are designed to ensure that your transmission is not damaged.

- Place the transmission in N (Neutral).
- Maximum speed is 35 mph (56 km/h).
- Maximum distance is 50 miles (80 km).

If a distance of 50 miles (80 km) or a speed of 35 mph (56 km/h) must be exceeded, you must disconnect the driveshaft. Ford recommends the driveshaft be removed/installed only by a qualified technician. See your local dealer for driveshaft removal/installation.

Improper removal/installation of the driveshaft can cause transmission fluid loss, damage to the driveshaft and internal transmission components.

4x4 with manual shift transfer case:

- Place the transfer case in N (Neutral).
- Front hub locks are in the FREE position.

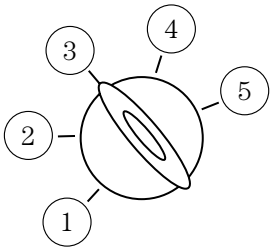
4x4 electronic shift transfer case vehicles with automatic transmissions:

Regarding recreational towing or having your vehicle towed, 4x4 vehicles with electronic shift on the fly cannot be towed with any wheels on the ground unless the rear driveshaft is removed and the front hub locks are in the FREE position (with the exception of moving it as a disabled vehicle off the road out of traffic).

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

STARTING

Positions of the ignition



1. ACCESSORY, allows the electrical accessories such as the radio to operate while the engine is not running.

2. LOCK, locks the steering wheel, automatic transmission gearshift lever and allows key removal. For vehicles equipped with a manual transmission, you must depress the ignition release lever to release the key.

3. OFF, shuts off the engine and all accessories without locking the steering wheel. This position also allows the automatic transmission shift lever to be moved from the P (Park) position without the brake pedal being depressed.

When the key is in the ignition and in the OFF position, the automatic transmission shift lever can be moved from the P (Park) position without the brake pedal depressed. To avoid unwanted vehicle movement, always set the parking brake.

4. ON, all electrical circuits operational. Warning lights illuminated. Key position when driving.

5. START, cranks the engine. Release the key as soon as the engine starts.

Preparing to start your vehicle

Engine starting is controlled by the powertrain control system. This system meets all Canadian Interference-Causing Equipment standard requirements regulating the impulse electrical field strength of radio noise.

When starting a fuel-injected engine, don't press the accelerator before or during starting. Only use the accelerator when you have difficulty starting the engine. For more information on starting the vehicle, refer to *Starting the engine* in this chapter.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.

Do not park, idle, or drive your vehicle in dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, which can start a fire.

Do not start your vehicle in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes can be toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine. See *Guarding against exhaust fumes* in this chapter for more instructions.

If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your dealer inspect your vehicle immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

Important safety precautions

When the engine starts, the idle RPM runs faster to warm the engine. If the engine idle speed does not slow down automatically, have the vehicle checked. If your vehicle is operated in a heavy snow storm or blowing snow conditions, the engine air induction may become partially clogged with snow and/or ice. If this occurs, the engine may experience a significant reduction in power output. At the earliest opportunity, clear all the snow and/or ice away from the air induction inlet. The following starting instructions are for vehicles equipped with a gasoline engine; if your vehicle is equipped with a Diesel engine, refer to *Starting the engine* in your *6.0 Liter Power Stroke Direct Injection Turbo Diesel Owner's Guide Supplement*.

Before starting the vehicle:

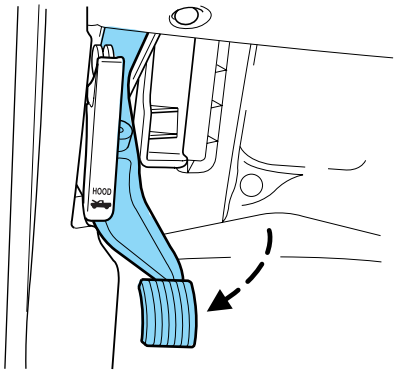
1. Make sure all occupants buckle their safety belts. For more information on safety belts and their proper usage, refer to the *Seating and Safety Restraints* chapter.

2. Make sure the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

If starting a vehicle with an automatic transmission:

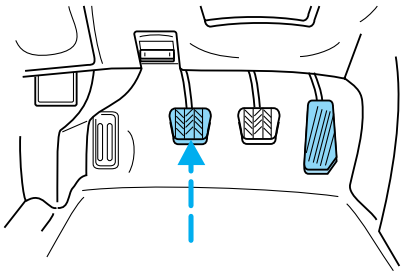
1. Make sure the parking brake is set.



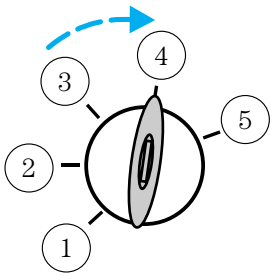
2. Make sure the gearshift is in P (Park).

If starting a vehicle with a manual transmission:

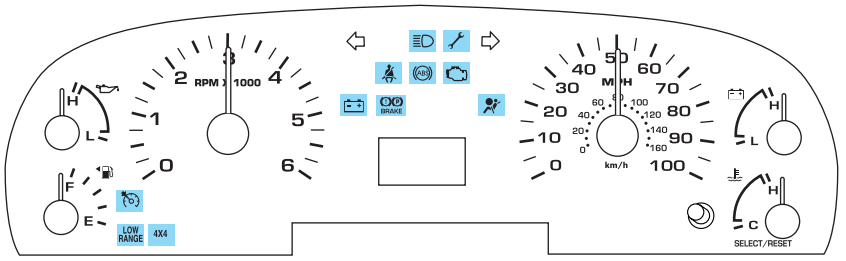
1. Make sure the parking brake is set.
2. Push the clutch pedal to the floor.

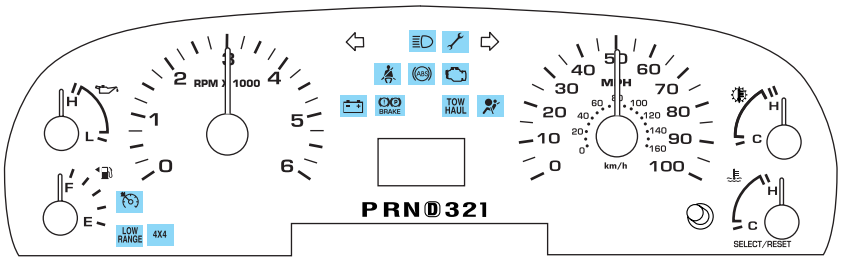


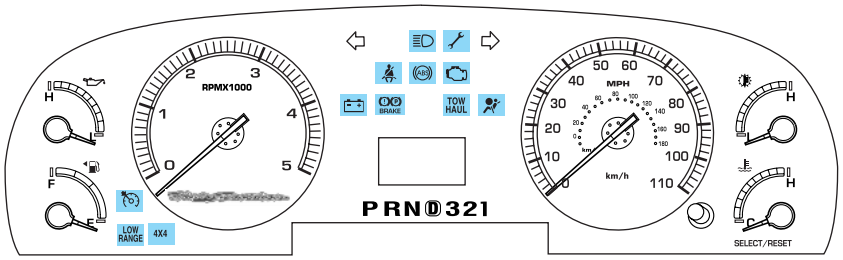
- Turn the key to 4 (ON) without turning the key to 5 (START).



DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS







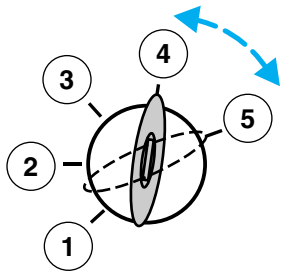
Make sure the corresponding lights illuminate or illuminate briefly. If a light fails to illuminate, have the vehicle serviced.

- If the driver's safety belt is fastened, the light may not illuminate.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Starting the engine

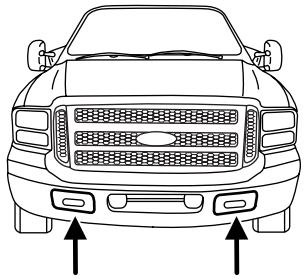
1. Turn the key to 4 (ON) without turning the key to 5 (START).
2. Turn the key to 5 (START), then release the key as soon as the engine starts. Excessive cranking could damage the starter.



Note: If the engine does not start within five seconds on the first try, turn the key to 3 (OFF), wait 10 seconds and try again. If the engine still fails to start, press the accelerator to the floor and try again; this will allow the engine to crank with the fuel shut off in case the engine is flooded with fuel.

Using the engine block heater (if equipped)

Use of an engine block heater is strongly recommended if you live in a region where temperatures reach -10°F (-23°C) or below. For best results, plug the heater in at least three hours before starting the vehicle. The heater can be plugged in the night before starting the vehicle. The plug for the block heater is exposed in the front of the vehicle, beneath the grille. Vehicles equipped with a gasoline engine have the plug exposed on the driver side of the vehicle; vehicles equipped with a Diesel engine have the plug exposed on the passenger side of the vehicle.



To reduce the risk of electrical shock, do not use your heater with ungrounded electrical systems or two-pronged (cheater) adapters.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Guarding against exhaust fumes

Carbon monoxide is present in exhaust fumes. Take precautions to avoid its dangerous effects.

If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your dealer inspect your vehicle immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

Important ventilating information

If the engine is idling while the vehicle is stopped for a long period of time, open the windows at least one inch (2.5 cm) or adjust the heating or air conditioning to bring in fresh air.

BRAKES

Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake linings may be worn-out and should be inspected by a qualified service technician. If the vehicle has continuous vibration or shudder in the steering wheel while braking, the vehicle should be inspected by a qualified service technician.

Refer to *Brake system warning light* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for information on the brake system warning light.

Four-wheel anti-lock brake system (ABS)

Your vehicle is equipped with an Anti-lock Braking System (ABS). This system helps you maintain steering control during emergency stops by keeping the brakes from locking. Noise from the ABS pump motor and brake pedal pulsation may be observed during ABS braking and the brake pedal may suddenly travel a little farther as soon as ABS braking is done and normal brake operation resumes. These are normal characteristics of the ABS and should be no reason for concern.

ABS warning lamp

The ABS lamp in the instrument cluster momentarily illuminates when the ignition is turned on. If the light does not illuminate during start up, remains on or flashes, the ABS may be disabled and may need to be serviced.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

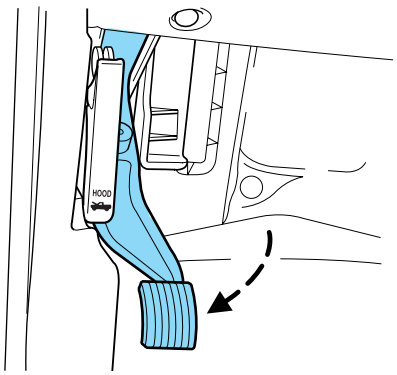
Even when the ABS is disabled, normal braking is still effective. (If your BRAKE warning lamp illuminates with the parking brake released, have your brake system serviced immediately.)

Using ABS

When hard braking is required, apply continuous force on the brake pedal; do not pump the brake pedal since this will reduce the effectiveness of the ABS and will increase your vehicle's stopping distance. The ABS will be activated immediately, allowing you to retain full steering control during hard braking and on slippery surfaces. However, the ABS does not decrease stopping distance.

Parking brake

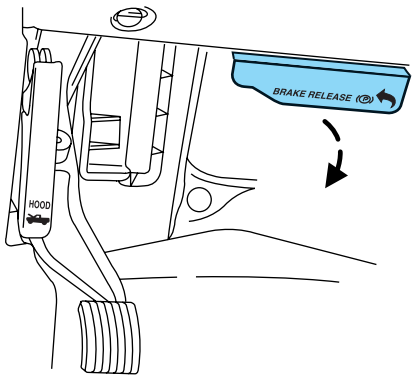
To set the parking brake, press the parking brake pedal down until the pedal stops.



The BRAKE warning lamp in the instrument cluster illuminates and remains illuminated until the parking brake is released.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Pull the right side of the release lever to release the parking brake; the release lever pulls at an angle toward the driver's door. To prevent the pedal from releasing too quickly, place your left foot on the parking brake pedal, then pull the release lever, making sure the pedal fully releases. You may want to pull the release lever again to make sure the parking brake is full released.



Always set the parking brake fully and make sure that the gearshift is securely latched in P (Park) (automatic transmission) or in 1 (First) (manual transmission).

Note: If your vehicle is equipped with a manual transmission, the engine may be required to run while power accessories operate and the parking brake is set. It is recommended that wheel chocks be used during this operation.

If you're parking your vehicle on a grade or with a trailer, press and hold the brake pedal down, then set the parking brake. There may be a little vehicle movement as the parking brake sets to hold the vehicle's weight. This is normal and should be no reason for concern. If needed, press and hold the service brake pedal down, then try reapplying the parking brake. Chock the wheels if required. If the parking brake cannot hold the weight of the vehicle, the parking brake may need to be serviced or the vehicle may be overloaded.

STEERING

To prevent damage to the power steering system:

- Never hold the steering wheel at its furthest turning points (until it stops) for more than a few seconds when the engine is running.
- Do not operate the vehicle with a low power steering pump fluid level (below the FULL COLD mark on the dipstick).

If the power steering system breaks down (or if the engine is turned off), you can steer the vehicle manually, but it takes more effort.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

If the steering wanders or pulls, check for:

- an improperly inflated tire
- uneven tire wear
- loose or worn suspension components
- loose or worn steering components
- improper steering alignment

If any steering components are serviced or replaced, install new fasteners (many are coated with thread adhesive or have prevailing torque features which may not be re-used). Never re-use a bolt or nut. Torque fasteners to specifications in *Workshop Manual*.

A high crown in the road or high crosswinds may also make the steering seem to wander/pull.

TRACTION-LOK AXLE (IF EQUIPPED)

This axle provides added traction on slippery surfaces, particularly when one wheel is on a poor traction surface. Under normal conditions, the Traction-Lok axle functions like a standard rear axle. The axle may exhibit a slight noise or vibration in tight turns with low vehicle speed. This is normal behavior and indicates the axle is working.

PREPARING TO DRIVE YOUR VEHICLE

Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.

In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a safety belt.

Your vehicle has larger tires and increased ground clearance, giving the vehicle a higher center of gravity than a passenger car.

Vehicles with a higher center of gravity such as utility and four-wheel drive vehicles handle differently than vehicles with a lower center of gravity. Utility and four-wheel drive vehicles are **not** designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions. Avoid sharp turns, excessive speed and abrupt maneuvers in these vehicles. Failure to drive cautiously could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Loaded vehicles, with a higher center of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Extra precautions such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance should be taken when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION OPERATION (IF EQUIPPED)

Brake-shift interlock

This vehicle is equipped with a brake-shift interlock feature that prevents the gearshift lever from being moved from P (Park) when the ignition is in the ON position unless brake pedal is depressed.

If you cannot move the gearshift lever out of P (Park) with ignition in the ON position and the brake pedal depressed:

1. Apply the parking brake, turn ignition key to LOCK, then remove the key.

2. Insert the key and turn it to OFF. **Apply the brake pedal and shift to N (Neutral)**.

When the key is in the ignition and in the OFF position, the automatic transmission shift lever can be moved from the P (Park) position without the brake pedal depressed. To avoid unwanted vehicle movement, always set the parking brake.

3. Start the vehicle.

If it is necessary to use the above procedure to move the gearshift lever, it is possible that a fuse has blown or the vehicle's brakelamps are not operating properly. Refer to *Fuses and relays* in the *Roadside Emergencies* chapter.

Do not drive your vehicle until you verify that the brakelamps are working.

Always set the parking brake fully and make sure the gearshift is latched in P (Park). Turn the ignition to the LOCK position and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. See your dealer or a qualified service technician as soon as possible.

Understanding the shift positions of the 5–speed automatic transmission

This vehicle is equipped with an adaptive Transmission Shift Strategy. Adaptive Shift Strategy offers the optimal transmission operation and shift quality. When the vehicle's battery has been disconnected for any type of service or repair, the transmission will need to relearn the normal shift strategy parameters, much like having to reset your radio stations when your vehicle battery has been disconnected. The Adaptive Transmission Strategy allows the transmission to relearn these operating parameters. This learning process could take several transmission upshifts and downshifts; during this learning process, slightly firmer shifts may occur. After this learning process, normal shift feel and shift scheduling will resume.

P (Park)

This position locks the transmission and prevents the rear wheels from turning.

To put your vehicle in gear:

- Start the engine
- Depress the brake pedal
- Move the gearshift lever into the desired gear

To put your vehicle in P (Park):

- Come to a complete stop
- Move the gearshift lever and securely latch it in P (Park)

Always set the parking brake fully and make sure the gearshift is latched in P (Park). Turn the ignition to the LOCK position and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

R (Reverse)

With the gearshift lever in R (Reverse), the vehicle will move backward. Always come to a complete stop before shifting into and out of R (Reverse).

N (Neutral)

With the gearshift lever in N (Neutral), the vehicle can be started and is free to roll. Hold the brake pedal down while in this position.

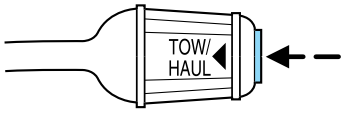
D (Overdrive) with Tow/Haul OFF

D (Overdrive) with Tow/Haul OFF is the normal driving position for the best fuel economy. The overdrive function allows automatic upshifts and downshifts through gears one through five.

D (Overdrive) with Tow/Haul ON

The Tow/Haul feature improves transmission operation when towing a trailer or a heavy load. All transmission gear ranges are available when using Tow/Haul.

To activate Tow/Haul, press the button on the end of the gearshift lever.



The TOW HAUL indicator light will illuminate in the instrument cluster.

TOW
HAUL

Tow/Haul delays upshifts to reduce frequency of transmission shifting. Tow/Haul also provides engine braking in all forward gears when the transmission is in the D (Overdrive) position; this engine braking will slow the vehicle and assist the driver in controlling the vehicle when descending a grade. Depending on driving conditions and load conditions, the transmission may downshift, slow the vehicle and control the vehicle speed when descending a hill, without the accelerator pedal being pressed. The amount of downshift braking provided will vary based upon the amount the brake pedal is depressed.

To deactivate the Tow/Haul feature and return to normal driving mode, press the button on the end of the gearshift lever. The TOW HAUL light will no longer be illuminated.

When you shut-off and restart the engine, the transmission will automatically return to normal D (Overdrive) mode (Tow/Haul OFF).

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Do not use the Tow/Haul feature when driving in icy or slippery conditions as the increased engine braking can cause the rear wheels to slide and the vehicle to swing around with the possible loss of vehicle control..

3 (Third)

Transmission operates up to third gear only.

Used for improved traction on slippery roads. Selecting 3 (Third) provides engine braking.

2 (Second)

Use 2 (Second) to start-up on slippery roads or to provide additional engine braking on downgrades.

1 (First)

- Provides maximum engine braking.
- Allows upshifts by moving gearshift lever.
- The transmission will not downshift into 1 (First) at high speeds; it will downshift to a lower gear and then shift into 1 (First) when the vehicle reaches slower speeds.

Forced downshifts

- Allowed in D (Overdrive) or Drive.
- Depress the accelerator to the floor.
- Allows transmission to select an appropriate gear.

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow

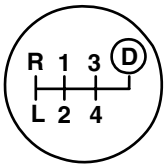
If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow, it may be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

Do not rock the vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature or damage to the transmission may occur.

Do not rock the vehicle for more than a minute or damage to the transmission and tires may occur, or the engine may overheat.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

MANUAL TRANSMISSION OPERATION (IF EQUIPPED)



Using the clutch

The manual transmission has a starter interlock that prevents cranking the engine unless the clutch pedal is fully depressed.

To start the vehicle:

1. Make sure the parking brake is fully set.

2. Press the clutch pedal to the floor, then put the gearshift lever in the neutral position.

3. Start the engine, then press the brake pedal and release the parking brake.

4. Move the gearshift lever to 1st gear, then slowly release the clutch pedal while slowly pressing on the accelerator.

During each shift, the clutch pedal must be fully depressed to the floor. Failure to fully depress the clutch pedal to the floor may cause increased shift efforts, prematurely wear transmission components or damage the transmission. Make sure the floor mat is properly positioned so it doesn't interfere with the full extension of the clutch pedal.

Do not drive with your foot resting on the clutch pedal or use the clutch pedal to hold your vehicle at a standstill while waiting on a hill. These actions will reduce the life of the clutch.

Recommended shift speeds

Do not overspeed the engine when going downhill or steep grades. If equipped, use the tachometer and do not allow engine speed to exceed the redline area. Operating the engine beyond the recommended speeds can cause severe engine damage.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Shift according to the following shift speed charts:

Upshifts when accelerating (recommended for best fuel economy)		
6-speed transmission		
Shift from:	Transfer case position[1] (if equipped)	
	2H or 4H	4L
LO-1	5 mph (8 km/h)	2 mph (3 km/h)
1-2	15 mph (24 km/h)	6 mph (10 km/h)
2-3	22 mph (35 km/h)	9 mph (14 km/h)
3-4	30 mph (48 km/h)	12 mph (19 km/h)
4 - Ⓓ (Overdrive)	40 mph (64 km/h)	15 mph (24 km/h)

Maximum downshift speeds[1]		
6-speed transmission		
Shift from:	Transfer case position (if equipped)[2]	
	2H or 4H	4L
Ⓓ (Overdrive) - 4	45 mph (72 km/h)	16 mph (26 km/h)
4-3	35 mph (56 km/h)	12 mph (19 km/h)
3-2	20 mph (32 km/h)	8 mph (13 km/h)
2-1	5 mph (8 km/h)	2 mph (3 km/h)
1-LO	Only shift to LO when at a stop.	
[1] Use 2H or 4H for 4WD equipped vehicles.		
[2] Downshift at lower speeds when driving on slippery surfaces.		

Reverse

1. Make sure that your vehicle is at a complete stop before you shift into R (Reverse). Failure to do so may damage the transmission.

2. Move the gearshift lever into the neutral position and wait at least three seconds before shifting into R (Reverse).

- The gearshift lever can only be moved into R (Reverse) by moving it from left of 3 (Third) and 4 (Fourth) before shifting into R (Reverse). This is a lockout feature that protects the transmission from accidentally being shifted into R (Reverse) from Ⓓ (Overdrive).

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Parking your vehicle

1. Apply the brake and shift into the neutral position.
2. Fully apply the parking brake, then shift into 1 (First).
3. Turn the ignition off.

Do not park your vehicle in Neutral, it may move unexpectedly and injure someone. Use 1 (First) gear and set the parking brake fully.

Removing the key

Turn the ignition off, push the release lever (located above the ignition), then turn the key toward you and remove the key.

REVERSE SENSING SYSTEM (IF EQUIPPED)

The Reverse Sensing System (RSS) sounds a tone to warn the driver of obstacles near the rear bumper when the R (Reverse) is selected and the vehicle is moving at speeds less than 3 mph (5 km/h). The system is not effective at speeds above 3 mph (5 km/h) and may not detect certain angular or moving objects.

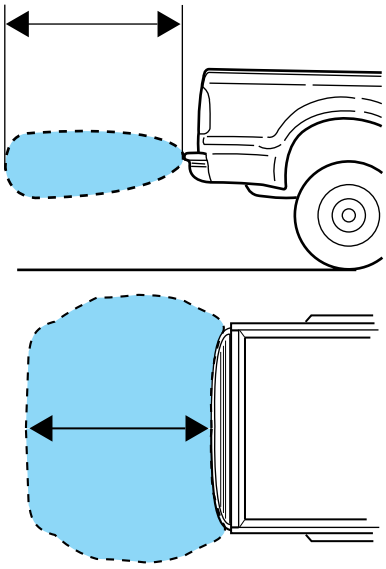
To help avoid personal injury, please read and understand the limitations of the reverse sensing system as contained in this section. Reverse sensing is only an aid for some (generally large and fixed) objects when moving in reverse on a flat surface at “parking speeds”. Inclement weather may also affect the function of the RSS; this may include reduced performance or a false activation.

To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse and when using the RSS.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

This system is not designed to prevent contact with small or moving objects. The system is designed to provide a warning to assist the driver in detecting large stationary objects to avoid damaging the vehicle. The system may not detect smaller objects, particularly those close to the ground.

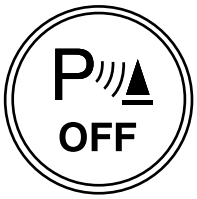
Certain add-on devices such as large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks and any device that may block the normal detection zone of the RSS system may create false beeps.



The RSS detects obstacles up to 6 feet (2 meters) from the rear bumper with a decreased coverage area at the outer corners of the bumper, (refer to the figures for approximate zone coverage areas). As you move closer to the obstacle, the rate of the tone increases. When the obstacle is less than 10 inches (25.0 cm) away, the tone will sound continuously. If the RSS detects a stationary or receding object further than 10 inches (25.0 cm) from the side of the vehicle, the tone will sound for only three seconds. Once the system detects an object approaching, the tone will sound again.

The RSS may have reduced performance or an increased chance of false detection if the tailgate is not locked and in the upright position. If the tailgate is down, the RSS tone may be heard intermittently or continuously. The tone may also be heard if items in the truck bed protrude rearward outside the bed.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



The RSS automatically turns on when the gearshift lever is placed in R (Reverse) and the ignition is ON. An RSS control allows the driver to turn the RSS on and off. To turn the RSS off, the ignition must be ON, and the gear selector in R (Reverse). An indicator light on the control will illuminate when the system is turned off. If the indicator light illuminates when the RSS is not turned off, it may indicate a failure in the RSS. The RSS will remain off until either the RSS control is pushed again or the ignition switch is recycled.

Keep the RSS sensors (located on the rear bumper/fascia) free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt (do not clean the sensors with sharp objects). If the sensors are covered, it will affect the accuracy of the RSS.

If your vehicle sustains damage to the rear bumper/fascia, leaving it misaligned or bent, the sensing zone may be altered causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alarms.

FOUR-WHEEL DRIVE (4WD) OPERATION (IF EQUIPPED)

For important information regarding safe operation of this type of vehicle, see **Preparing to drive your vehicle** in this chapter.

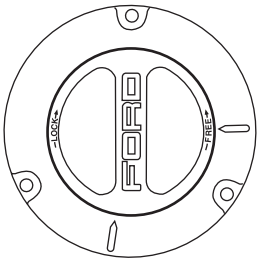
When four–wheel drive (4WD) is engaged, power is supplied to all four wheels through a transfer case. 4WD can be selected when additional driving power is desired.

4WD operation is not recommended on dry pavement. Doing so could result in difficult disengagement of the transfer case, increased tire wear and decreased fuel economy.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Manual 4x4 system (if equipped)

The 4WD system is engaged or disengaged by rotating the control for both front wheel hub locks from the FREE or LOCK position, then manually engaging or disengaging the transfer case with the floor-mounted shifter. For increased fuel economy in 2WD, rotate both hub locks to the FREE position.



- **For proper operation, make sure that each hub is fully engaged and that both hub locks are set to the same position (both set to LOCK or both set to FREE). To engage LOCK, turn the hub locks completely clockwise; to disengage the hubs (FREE), turn the hub locks completely counterclockwise.**
- Some vehicles may be equipped with wheel ornaments that cover the 4x4 manual hub lock. These ornaments must be removed to access the manual hub locks.

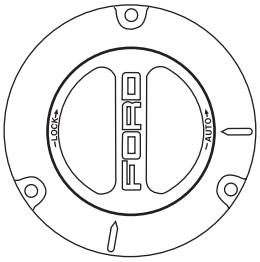
Electronic shift on the fly (ESOF) 4x4 system (if equipped)

If equipped with the electronic shift 4WD System, and the instrument panel control is moved to 4X4 LOW (4WD Low) while the vehicle is moving above 3 mph (5 km/h), the system will not engage and no damage will occur to the 4WD system. Before 4X4 LOW (4WD Low) can be engaged, the vehicle speed must be below 3 mph (5 km/h) with the brake pedal depressed and the transmission in N (Neutral). This vehicle is equipped with a non-synchronous low range gearset which will not allow the transfer case to shift into 4X4 LOW (4WD Low) if vehicle speed is above 3 mph (5 km/h). It is recommended that a shift to 4X4 LOW (4WD Low) is performed while the vehicle speed is below 3 mph (5 km/h).

The 4WD system:

- provides 4x4 High engagement and disengagement while the vehicle is moving.
- is operated by a rotary control located on the instrument panel that allows you select 2WD, 4x4 High or 4x4 Low operation.
- uses auto-manual hub locks that can be engaged and disengaged automatically based on the 4x4 mode selected.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



- auto-manual hub locks can be manually overridden by rotating the hub lock control from AUTO to LOCK if desired.
- **automatic operation of the hub locks is recommended,** and will increase fuel economy
- **For proper operation, make sure that each hub is fully engaged and that both hub locks are set to the same position (both set to LOCK or both set to AUTO). To engage LOCK, turn the hub locks completely clockwise; to engage AUTO, turn the hub locks completely counterclockwise.**

4WD system indicator lights

The 4WD system indicator lights illuminate only under the following conditions. If these lights illuminate when driving in 2WD, contact your Ford dealer as soon as possible.

- **4x4** - momentarily illuminates after the engine is started. Illuminates when 4H (4x4 High) or 4L (4x4 Low) is engaged.
- **LOW RANGE** – momentarily illuminates when the ignition is turned to the ON position. Illuminates when 4L (4x4 Low) is engaged.

4x4

LOW
RANGE

Using a manual 4WD system (if equipped)

Note: Some noise may be heard as the 4WD system shifts or engages. This is normal.

2H (2WD High) – For general on-road driving. Sends power to the rear wheels only.

4H (4WD High) – For winter and off-road conditions. Sends power to front and rear wheels.

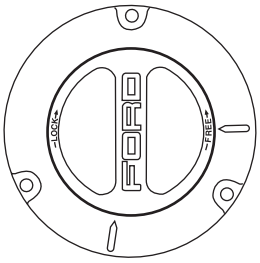
N (Neutral) – Only used when towing the vehicle.

4L (4WD Low)– For low-speed off-road applications that require extra power such as steep grades, deep sand or pulling a boat out of the water. Sends power to front and rear wheels.

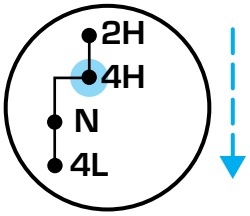
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Shifting from 2H (2WD High) to 4H (4WD High)

Engage the locking hubs by rotating the hub lock control from FREE to LOCK, then move the transfer case lever from 2H (2WD High) to 4H (4WD High).



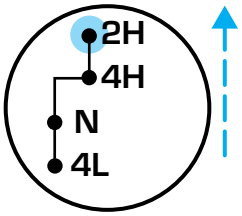
- **For proper operation, make sure that the arrow and the indicator dot on the hub are aligned, and that both hubs are set to LOCK.**
- **Do not shift into 4H (4WD High) with the rear wheels slipping.**



Shifting from 4H (4WD High) to 2H (2WD High)

Move the transfer case lever to 2H (2WD High) at a stop or any forward speed up to 55 mph (88 km/h).

With the vehicle at complete stop, disengage the locking hubs (optional) by rotating the hub lock control from LOCK to FREE.



- **For proper operation, make sure that the arrow and the indicator dot on the hub are aligned, and that both hubs are set to FREE**

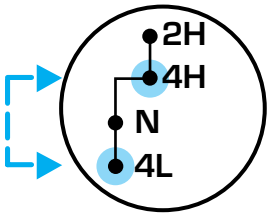
Shifting from 4H (4WD High) to 4L (4WD Low)

1. Bring the vehicle to a complete stop.
2. Depress the brake.
3. Place the gearshift lever in N (Neutral) (automatic transmission) or depress the clutch (manual transmission).

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

4. Move the transfer case shift lever through N (Neutral) directly to 4L (4WD Low).

5. If the transfer case **will not** engage into 4L (4WD Low), let the vehicle creep at a speed above 1 mph (1.6 km/h), then repeat steps 1 through 4.



Shifting from 4L (4WD Low) to 4H (4WD High) or 2H (2WD High)

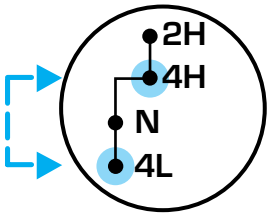
1. Bring the vehicle to a complete stop.

2. Depress the brake.

3. Place the gearshift lever in N (Neutral) (automatic transmission) or depress the clutch (manual transmission).

4. Move the transfer case shift lever through N (Neutral) directly to 4H (4WD High) or 2H (2WD High).

5. If the transfer case **will not** disengage from 4L (4WD Low), drive the vehicle above 5 mph (8 km/h), then repeat steps 1 through 4.

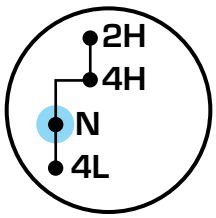


6. If shifting to 2H (2WD High) with the vehicle at a complete stop, disengage the locking hubs (optional) by rotating the hub lock control from LOCK to FREE.

Using the N (Neutral) position

The transfer case neutral position overrides the transmission and puts the vehicle in neutral regardless of transmission gearshift lever position. The vehicle can move forward or backwards.

This position should only be used when towing the vehicle.



DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Do not leave the vehicle unattended with the transfer case in the N (Neutral) position. Always set the parking brake fully and turn off the ignition when leaving the vehicle.

Using the electronic shift 4WD system (if equipped)

Positions of the electronic shift system

The electronic shift 4WD system is designed to allow up to 45 seconds before a shift command is performed. In the event that conflicting shift commands are selected, allow up to 45 seconds for the shift command to be performed prior to reporting any shift concerns to your dealer.

Note: Some noise may be heard as the 4WD system shifts or engages. This is normal.

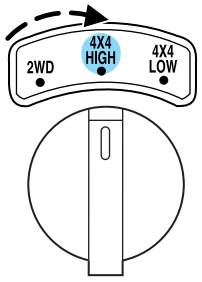
2H (2WD High) – For general on-road driving. Sends power to the rear wheels only.

4H (4WD High) – For winter and off-road conditions. Sends power to front and rear wheels.

4L (4WD Low)– For low-speed off-road applications that require extra power such as steep grades, deep sand or pulling a boat out of the water. Sends power to front and rear wheels.

Shifting from 2WD (2WD High) to 4x4 HIGH (4WD High)

Rotate the 4WD control to the 4x4 HIGH position at speeds up to 55 mph (88 km/h).

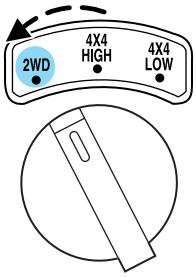


- **The electronic shift 4WD system is designed to engage 4x4 HIGH (4WD High) when the vehicle is moving. If shifted to 4x4 HIGH (4WD HIGH) while at complete stop, 4x4 may not engage and the 4x4 indicator may not illuminate until the vehicle is driven above 5 mph (8 km/h).**
- **Do not shift into 4x4 HIGH with the rear wheels slipping.**

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Shifting from 4x4 HIGH (4WD High) to 2WD (2WD High)

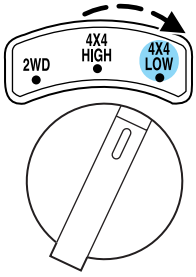
Rotate the 4WD control to 2WD at any forward speed. Disengagement of the transfer case and front hubs may be delayed due to torque bind which is caused by driving on dry hard surfaces or performing tight turns while using the 4WD system.



- You **do not** need to operate the vehicle in R (Reverse) to disengage your front hubs, but it will eliminate any torque bind and allow the system to immediately disengage.

Shifting from 4x4 HIGH (4WD High) to 4x4 LOW (4WD Low)

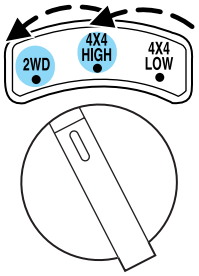
1. Bring the vehicle to a complete stop.
2. Depress the brake.
3. Place the gearshift in N (Neutral) (automatic transmission) or depress the clutch (manual transmission).
4. Move the 4WD control to the 4x4 LOW position.
5. Hold the shift conditions until the LOW RANGE indicator light illuminates.
6. If the LOW RANGE indicator light **does not** illuminate within 15 seconds, let the vehicle creep at a speed above 1 mph (1.6 km/h), then repeat steps 1 through 5 before reporting any shift concerns to your dealer.



Shifting from 4x4 LOW (4WD Low) to 4x4 HIGH (4WD High) or 2WD (2WD High)

1. Bring the vehicle to a complete stop.
2. Depress the brake.
3. Place the gearshift in N (Neutral) (automatic transmission) or depress the clutch (manual transmission).

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



4. Move the 4WD control to the 4x4 HIGH (4WD High) or 2WD (2WD High) position.

5. Hold the shift conditions until the LOW RANGE indicator light shuts off.

6. If the LOW RANGE indicator light **does not** shut off within 15 seconds, drive the vehicle above 5 mph (8 km/h), then repeat steps 1 through 5 before reporting any shift concerns to your dealer.

Driving off-road with truck and utility vehicles

4WD vehicles are specially equipped for driving on sand, snow, mud and rough terrain and have operating characteristics that are somewhat different from conventional vehicles, both on and off the road.

How your vehicle differs from other vehicles

Truck and utility vehicles can differ from some other vehicles. Your vehicle may be higher to allow it to travel over rough terrain without getting hung up or damaging underbody components.

The differences that make your vehicle so versatile also make it handle differently than an ordinary passenger car.

Maintain steering wheel control at all times, especially in rough terrain. Since sudden changes in terrain can result in abrupt steering wheel motion, make sure you grip the steering wheel from the outside. Do not grip the spokes.

Drive cautiously to avoid vehicle damage from concealed objects such as rocks and stumps.

You should either know the terrain or examine maps of the area before driving. Map out your route before driving in the area. To maintain steering and braking control of your vehicle, you must have all four wheels on the ground and they must be rolling, not sliding or spinning.

Basic operating principles

- Do not use 4WD on dry, hard surfaced roads. Doing so will produce excessive noise, increase tire wear and may damage drive components. 4WD modes are only intended for consistently slippery or loose surfaces.
- Drive slower in strong crosswinds which can affect the normal steering characteristics of your vehicle.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

- Be extremely careful when driving on pavement made slippery by loose sand, water, gravel, snow or ice.

If your vehicle goes off the edge of the pavement

- If your vehicle goes off the edge of the pavement, slow down, but avoid severe brake application, ease the vehicle back onto the pavement only after reducing your speed. Do not turn the steering wheel too sharply while returning to the road surface.
- It may be safer to stay on the apron or shoulder of the road and slow down gradually before returning to the pavement. You may lose control if you do not slow down or if you turn the steering wheel too sharply or abruptly.
- It often may be less risky to strike small objects, such as highway reflectors, with minor damage to your vehicle rather than attempt a sudden return to the pavement which could cause the vehicle to slide sideways out of control or roll over. Remember, your safety and the safety of others should be your primary concern.

Vehicles with a higher center of gravity such as utility and four-wheel drive vehicles handle differently than vehicles with a lower center of gravity. Utility and four-wheel drive vehicles are **not** designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions. Avoid sharp turns, excessive speed and abrupt maneuvers in these vehicles. Failure to drive cautiously could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

If your vehicle gets stuck

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow it may be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts, in a steady pattern. Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

Do not rock the vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature or damage to the transmission may occur.

Do not rock the vehicle for more than a few minutes or damage to the transmission and tires may occur or the engine may overheat.

Do not spin the wheels at over 35 mph (56 km/h). The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Refer to *Transmission temperature gauge* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for transmission fluid temperature information.

Emergency maneuvers

- In an unavoidable emergency situation where a sudden sharp turn must be made, remember to avoid "over-driving" your vehicle, i.e., turn the steering wheel only as rapidly and as far as required to avoid the emergency. Excessive steering will result in less vehicle control, not more. Additionally, smooth variations of the accelerator and/or brake pedal pressure should be utilized if changes in vehicle speed are called for. Avoid abrupt steering, acceleration or braking which could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover and/or personal injury. Use all available road surface to return the vehicle to a safe direction of travel.
- In the event of an emergency stop, avoid skidding the tires and do not attempt any sharp steering wheel movements.

Vehicles with a higher center of gravity such as utility and four-wheel drive vehicles handle differently than vehicles with a lower center of gravity. Utility and four-wheel drive vehicles are **not** designed for cornering at speeds as high as passenger cars any more than low-slung sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions. Avoid sharp turns, excessive speed and abrupt maneuvers in these vehicles. Failure to drive cautiously could result in an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.

- If the vehicle goes from one type of surface to another (i.e., from concrete to gravel) there will be a change in the way the vehicle responds to a maneuver (steering, acceleration or braking). Again, avoid these abrupt inputs.

Parking

On some 4WD vehicles, when the transfer case is in the N (Neutral) position, the engine and transmission are disconnected from the rest of the driveline. Therefore, the vehicle is free to roll even if the automatic transmission is in P (Park) or the manual transmission is in gear. Do not leave the vehicle unattended with the transfer case in the N (Neutral) position. Always set the parking brake fully and turn off the ignition when leaving the vehicle.

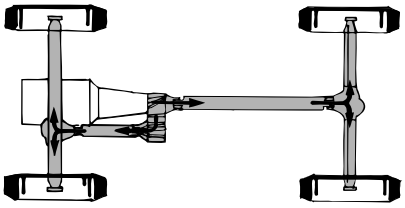
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Always set the parking brake fully and make sure the gearshift is latched in P (Park). Turn the ignition to the LOCK position and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. See your dealer or a qualified service technician.

4WD Systems

4WD (when you select a 4WD mode), uses all four wheels to power the vehicle. This increases traction, enabling you to drive over terrain and road conditions that a conventional two-wheel drive vehicle cannot.



Power is supplied to all four wheels through a transfer case. On 4WD vehicles, the transfer case allows you to select 4WD when necessary. Information on transfer case operation and shifting procedures can be found in the *Driving* chapter. Information on transfer case maintenance can be found in the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter. You should become thoroughly familiar with this information before you operate your vehicle.

Normal characteristics

On some 4WD models, the initial shift from two-wheel drive to 4x4 while the vehicle is moving can cause some momentary clunk and ratcheting sounds. This is the front drivetrain coming up to speed and the automatic locking hubs engaging and is not cause for concern.

Sand

When driving over sand, try to keep all four wheels on the most solid area of the trail. Avoid reducing the tire pressures but shift to a lower gear and drive steadily through the terrain. Apply the accelerator slowly and avoid spinning the wheels.

If you must reduce the tire pressure for whatever reason in sand, make sure you re-inflate the tires as soon as possible.

Avoid excessive speed because vehicle momentum can work against you and cause the vehicle to become stuck to the point that assistance may

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

be required from another vehicle. Remember, you may be able to back out the way you came if you proceed with caution.

Mud and water

If you must drive through high water, drive slowly. Traction or brake capability may be limited.

When driving through water, determine the depth; avoid water higher than the bottom of the hubs (if possible) and proceed slowly. If the ignition system gets wet, the vehicle may stall.

Once through water, always try the brakes. Wet brakes do not stop the vehicle as effectively as dry brakes. Drying can be improved by moving your vehicle slowly while applying light pressure on the brake pedal.

Be cautious of sudden changes in vehicle speed or direction when you are driving in mud. Even 4WD vehicles can lose traction in slick mud. As when you are driving over sand, apply the accelerator slowly and avoid spinning your wheels. If the vehicle does slide, steer in the direction of the slide until you regain control of the vehicle.

If the transmission, transfer case or front axle are submerged in water, their fluids should be checked and changed, if necessary.

Driving through deep water may damage the transmission.

Refer to *Transmission temperature gauge* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for transmission fluid temperature information.

If the front or rear axle is submerged in water, the axle lubricant should be replaced.

After driving through mud, clean off residue stuck to rotating driveshafts and tires. Excess mud stuck on tires and rotating driveshafts causes an imbalance that could damage drive components.

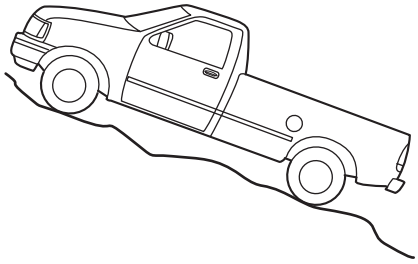
“Tread Lightly” is an educational program designed to increase public awareness of land-use regulations and responsibilities in our nations wilderness areas. Ford Motor Company joins the U.S. Forest Service and the Bureau of Land Management in encouraging you to help preserve our national forest and other public and private lands by “treading lightly.”

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Driving on hilly or sloping terrain

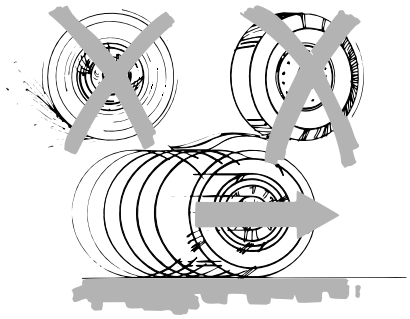
Although natural obstacles may make it necessary to travel diagonally up or down a hill or steep incline, you should always try to drive straight up or straight down. **Avoid driving crosswise or turning on steep slopes or hills**. A danger lies in losing traction, slipping sideways and possibly rolling over. Whenever driving on a hill, determine beforehand the route you will use. Do not drive over the crest of a hill without seeing what conditions are on the other side. Do not drive in reverse over a hill without the aid of an observer.

When climbing a steep slope or hill, start in a lower gear rather than downshifting to a lower gear from a higher gear once the ascent has started. This reduces strain on the engine and the possibility of stalling.



If you do stall out, do not try to turn around because you might roll over. It is better to back down to a safe location.

Apply just enough power to the wheels to climb the hill. Too much power will cause the tires to slip, spin or lose traction, resulting in loss of vehicle control.



Descend a hill in the same gear you would use to climb up the hill to avoid excessive brake application and brake overheating. Do not descend in neutral; instead, disengage overdrive or manually shift to a lower gear. When descending a steep hill, avoid sudden hard braking as you could lose control. When you brake hard, the front wheels can't turn and if they aren't turning, you won't be able to steer. The front wheels have to be turning in order to steer the vehicle. Rapid pumping of the brake pedal will help you slow the vehicle and still maintain steering control.

If your vehicle has anti-lock brakes, apply the brakes steadily. Do not "pump" the brakes.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Driving on snow and ice

4WD vehicles have advantages over 2WD vehicles in snow and ice but can skid like any other vehicle.

Should you start to slide while driving on snowy or icy roads, turn the steering wheel in the direction of the slide until you regain control.

Avoid sudden applications of power and quick changes of direction on snow and ice. Apply the accelerator slowly and steadily when starting from a full stop.

Avoid sudden braking as well. Although a 4WD vehicle may accelerate better than a two-wheel drive vehicle in snow and ice, it won't stop any faster, because as in other vehicles, braking occurs at all four wheels. Do not become overconfident as to road conditions.

Make sure you allow sufficient distance between you and other vehicles for stopping. Drive slower than usual and consider using one of the lower gears. In emergency stopping situations, avoid locking of the wheels. Use a "squeeze" technique, push on the brake pedal with a steadily increasing force which allows the wheels to brake yet continue to roll so that you may steer in the direction you want to travel. If you lock the wheels, release the brake pedal and repeat the squeeze technique. If your vehicle is equipped with a Four Wheel Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS), apply the brake steadily. Do not "pump" the brakes. Refer to the *Brakes* section of this chapter for additional information on the operation of the anti-lock brake system.

Never drive with chains on the front tires of 4WD vehicles without also putting them on the rear tires. This could cause the rear to slide and swing around during braking.

Maintenance and Modifications

The suspension and steering systems on your vehicle have been designed and tested to provide predictable performance whether loaded or empty and durable load carrying capability. For this reason, Ford Motor Company strongly recommends that you do not make modifications such as adding or removing parts (such as lift kits or stabilizer bars) or by using replacement parts not equivalent to the original factory equipment.

Any modifications to a vehicle that raise the center of gravity can make it more likely the vehicle will roll over as a result of a loss of control. Ford Motor Company recommends that caution be used with any vehicle equipped with a high load or device (such as ladder racks or pickup box cover).

Failure to maintain your vehicle properly may void the warranty, increase your repair cost, reduce vehicle performance and operational capabilities

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

and adversely affect driver and passenger safety. Frequent inspection of vehicle chassis components is recommended if the vehicle is subjected to heavy off-road usage.

VEHICLE USED AS A STATIONARY POWER SOURCE

Auxiliary equipment called power take-off, or PTO, is often added to the engine or transmission to operate utility equipment. Examples include a wheel-lift for tow trucks, tools for construction and cranes. PTO applications draw auxiliary horsepower from the powertrain, often while the vehicle is stationary. In this condition, there is limited cooling air flow through the radiator and around the vehicle that normally occurs when a vehicle is moving. Depending on the level and duration of auxiliary horsepower draw, vehicle conditions and surrounding environmental conditions and other factors, this can contribute to elevated transmission fluid temperatures and result in accelerated fluid deterioration, fuel vapor over-pressurization, and other concerns. Ford trucks are fully qualified for stationary PTO operation for 10 minutes or less of continuous operation. For extended duration stationary PTO operation (beyond 10 minutes), a diesel engine is recommended, and further consult your aftermarket PTO installer.

Transmission Power Take-Off (PTO) Provision (if equipped)

Some vehicles with an automatic transmission may be equipped with a "Transmission Power Take-Off Provision", Option Code 62R. These vehicles have a special transmission that includes a port on the left-hand side to mount an aftermarket PTO, an internal PTO gear, and calibration for PTO usage. The actual PTO and related equipment is not offered by Ford Motor Company, but is installed by an aftermarket source. The PTO gear in the transmission will drive the aftermarket PTO while driving the vehicle. Therefore, some additional gear noise that may result is normal. Also, the transmission upshift and downshift schedules will be reduced by about 15% and may result in a firmer shift feel during PTO mobile applications.

A more complete description of PTO operation is discussed in the Ford Truck Body Builders Layout Book, found at www.fleet.ford.com/truckbbas.

DRIVING THROUGH WATER

If driving through deep or standing water is unavoidable, proceed very slowly especially when the depth is not known. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the hubs (for trucks) or the bottom of the wheel rims (for cars). When driving through water,

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

traction or brake capability may be limited. Also, water may enter your engine's air intake and severely damage your engine or your vehicle may stall. **Driving through deep water where the transmission vent tube is submerged may allow water into the transmission and cause internal transmission damage.**

Once through the water, always dry the brakes by moving your vehicle slowly while applying light pressure on the brake pedal. Wet brakes do not stop the vehicle as quickly as dry brakes.

SNOWPLOWING

Ford recommends that the Super Duty F-Series used for snow removal include the Snow Plow Package Option.

Installing the snowplow

Weight limits and guidelines for selecting and installing the snowplow can be found in the *Ford Truck Body Builders Layout Book*, Snowplow section, found at www.fleet.ford.com/truckbbas. A typical installation affects the following:

- Certification to government safety laws such as occupant protection and air bag deployment, braking, and lighting. Look for an ″Alterer's Label″ on the vehicle from the snowplow installer certifying that the installation meets all applicable Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards (FMVSS).
- The Total Accessory Reserve Capacity (TARC) is shown on the lower right side of the vehicle's Safety Certification Label. This applies to Ford-completed vehicles of 10,000 lb. GVWR or less. This is the weight of permanently-attached auxiliary equipment, such as snowplow frame-mounting hardware, that can be added to the vehicle and satisfy Ford compliance certification to FMVSS. Exceeding this weight may require the auxiliary equipment installer additional safety certification responsibility. The Front Accessory Reserve Capacity (FARC) is added for customer convenience.
- Rear ballast weight behind the rear axle may be required to prevent exceeding the FGAWR, and provide front-to-rear weight balance for proper braking and steering.
- Front wheel toe may require re-adjustment to prevent premature uneven tire wear. Specifications are found in the Ford *Workshop Manual*.
- Headlight aim may require re-adjustment.
- The tire air pressures recommended for general driving are found on the vehicle's Safety Certification Label. The maximum cold inflation

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

pressure for the tire and associated load rating is imprinted on the tire sidewall. Tire air pressure may require re-adjustment within these pressure limits to accommodate the additional weight of the snowplow installation.

- Federal and some local regulations require additional exterior lamps for snowplow-equipped vehicles. Consult your dealer for additional information.

Operating the vehicle with the snowplow attached

Do not use your vehicle for snow removal until it has been driven at least 500 miles (800 km).

The attached snowplow blade restricts airflow to the radiator, and may cause the engine to run at a higher temperature:

- If you are driving more than 15 miles (24 km) where outside air temperatures are above freezing, then angle the plow blade to full left or right to maximize airflow to the radiator.
- If you are driving less than 15 miles (24 km) at speeds up to 40 mph (64 km/h) in cold weather you will not need to adjust blade position

Follow the severe duty schedule in your *Scheduled Maintenance Guide* for engine oil and transmission fluid change intervals.

Snowplowing with your air bag-equipped vehicle

Your vehicle is equipped with a driver and passenger air bag Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) The SRS is designed to activate in certain frontal and offset frontal collisions when the vehicle sustains sufficient longitudinal deceleration.

Careless or high speed driving while plowing snow which results in sufficient vehicle decelerations can deploy the air bag. Such driving also increases the risk of accidents.

All occupants of the vehicle, including the driver, should always properly wear their safety belts, even when an air bag supplemental restraint system (SRS) is provided.

Never remove or defeat the “tripping mechanisms” designed into the snow removal equipment by its manufacturer. Doing so may cause damage to the vehicle and the snow removal equipment as well as possible air bag deployment.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the air bag supplemental restraint system (SRS) or its fuses. See your Ford or Lincoln Mercury dealer.

Additional equipment such as snowplow equipment may effect the performance of the air bag sensors increasing the risk of injury. Please refer to the *Body Builders Layout Book* for instructions about the appropriate installation of additional equipment.

Transmission operation while plowing

- Shift transfer case to 4x4 LOW (4WD Low) when plowing in small areas at speeds below 5 mph (8 km/h).
- Shift transfer case to 4x4 HIGH (4WD High) when plowing larger areas or light snow at higher speeds. Do not exceed 15 mph (24 km/h).
- Do not shift the transmission from a forward gear to R (Reverse) until the engine is at idle and the wheels are stopped.
- If the vehicle is stuck, shift the transmission in a steady motion between forward and reverse gears. Do not rock the vehicle for more than a few minutes. The transmission and tires may be damaged or the engine can overheat.

Do not rock the vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature. Do not rock the vehicle for more than a minute. The transmission and tires may be damaged or the engine may overheat.

Refer to *Transmission temperature gauge* in the *Instrument Cluster* chapter for transmission fluid temperature information.

Do not spin the wheels at over 35 mph (55 km/h). The tires may fail and injure a passenger or bystander.

Removing the snowplow frame mount

A metal crossmember is included below the front bumper on Super Duty vehicles called a “BlockerBeam”. Typical snowplow installations require removal of this BlockerBeam to install the snowplow mounting hardware to the vehicle frame.

The BlockerBeam must be re-installed if the snowplow frame-mounting hardware is removed from the vehicle to assure proper air bag deployment in a crash.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

GETTING ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE

To fully assist you should you have a vehicle concern, Ford Motor Company offers a complimentary roadside assistance program. This program is separate from the New Vehicle Limited Warranty. The service is available:

- 24–hours, seven days a week
- for the New Vehicle Limited Warranty period of three years or 36,000 miles (60,000 km), whichever occurs first on Ford and Mercury vehicles, and four years or 50,000 miles (80,000 km) on Lincoln vehicles.

Roadside assistance will cover:

- a flat tire change with a good spare (except Ford GT which has a tire inflation kit)
- battery jump start
- lock-out assistance (key replacement cost is the customer's responsibility)
- fuel delivery (2.0 gallons [7.5L], maximum two occurrences within 12 month period)
- towing of your disabled vehicle to the nearest Ford Motor Company dealership, or your selling dealer if within 35 miles (56.3 km) of the nearest Ford Motor Company dealership (one tow per disablement). Even non-warranty related tows, like accidents, are covered (some exclusions apply, such as impound towing or repossession).

Canadian customers refer to your Owner Information Guide for information on:

- coverage period
- exact fuel amounts
- towing of your disabled vehicle
- emergency travel expense reimbursement
- travel planning benefits

USING ROADSIDE ASSISTANCE

Complete the roadside assistance identification card and place it in your wallet for quick reference. In the United States, this card is found in the Owner Guide portfolio in the glove compartment. In Canada, the card is found in the *Owner Information Guide* in the glove compartment.

U.S. Ford or Mercury vehicle customers who require roadside assistance, call 1–800–241–3673; Lincoln vehicle customers call 1–800–521–4140.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Canadian customers who require roadside assistance, call 1–800–665–2006.

If you need to arrange roadside assistance for yourself, Ford Motor Company will reimburse a reasonable amount. To obtain reimbursement information, U.S. Ford or Mercury vehicles customers call 1-800-241-3673; Lincoln vehicle customers call 1–800–521–4140.

Canadian customers who need to obtain reimbursement information, call 1–800–665–2006.

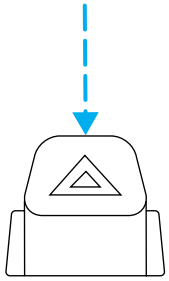
ROADSIDE COVERAGE BEYOND BASIC WARRANTY

In the United States, you may purchase additional roadside assistance coverage beyond this period through the Ford Auto Club by contacting your Ford or Lincoln/Mercury dealer.

Similarly in Canada, for uninterrupted Roadside Assistance coverage, you may purchase extended coverage prior to your Basic Warranty's Roadside Assistance expiring. For more information and enrollment, contact 1–877–294–2582 or visit our website at www.ford.ca.

HAZARD FLASHER

The hazard flasher is located on the steering column, just behind the steering wheel. The hazard flashers will operate when the ignition is in any position or if the key is not in the ignition.



Push in the flasher control and all front and rear direction signals will flash. Press the flasher control again to turn them off. Use it when your vehicle is disabled and is creating a safety hazard for other motorists.

Note: With extended use, the flasher may run down your battery.

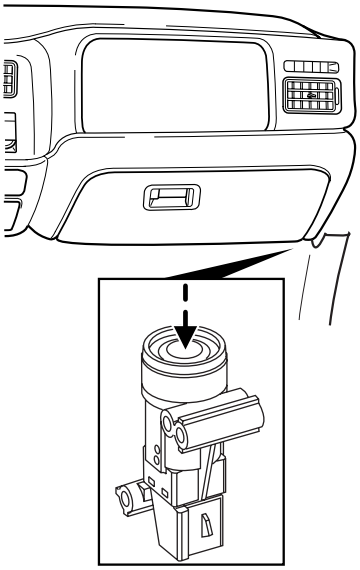
FUEL PUMP SHUT-OFF SWITCH

This device stops the electric fuel pump from sending fuel to the engine when your vehicle has had a substantial jolt.

After an accident, if the engine cranks but does not start, this switch may have been activated.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

This switch is located in the front passenger's footwell, behind the kick panel access cover.



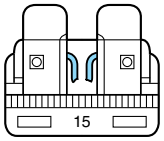
To reset the switch:

1. Turn the ignition OFF.
2. Check the fuel system for leaks.
3. If no leaks are apparent, reset the switch by pushing in on the reset button.
4. Turn the ignition ON.
5. Wait a few seconds and return the key to OFF.
6. Make another check for leaks.

FUSES AND RELAYS

Fuses

If electrical components in the vehicle are not working, a fuse may have blown. Blown fuses are identified by a broken wire within the fuse. Check the appropriate fuses before replacing any electrical components.



Note: Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

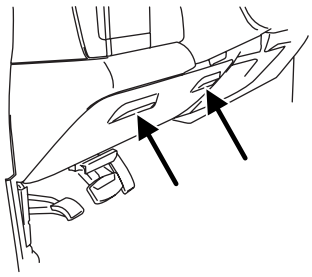
Standard fuse amperage rating and color

COLOR					
Fuse rating	**Mini fuses**	**Standard fuses**	**Maxi fuses**	**Cartridge maxi fuses**	**Fuse link cartridge**
2A	Grey	Grey	—	—	—
3A	Violet	Violet	—	—	—
4A	Pink	Pink	—	—	—
5A	Tan	Tan	—	—	—
7.5A	Brown	Brown	—	—	—
10A	Red	Red	—	—	—
15A	Blue	Blue	—	—	—
20A	Yellow	Yellow	Yellow	Blue	Blue
25A	Natural	Natural	—	—	—
30A	Green	Green	Green	Pink	Pink
40A	—	—	Orange	Green	Green
50A	—	—	Red	Red	Red
60A	—	—	Blue	—	Yellow
70A	—	—	Tan	—	Brown
80A	—	—	Natural	—	Black

Passenger compartment fuse panel

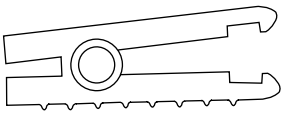
The fuse panel is located below and to the left of the steering wheel by the brake pedal. Remove the panel cover to access the fuses.

To remove the fuse panel cover, pull the panel downward by the finger slots on top of the panel. When the top clips of the panel disengage, let the panel fall easily.

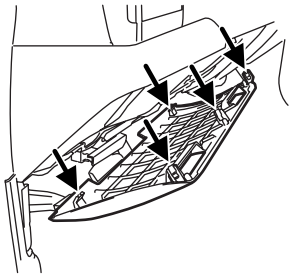


DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

To remove a fuse use the fuse puller tool provided on the fuse panel cover.



To reinstall the cover, align and engage the two hooked clips at the bottom of the cover onto the instrument panel, then lift the panel and press the top clips firmly into place.

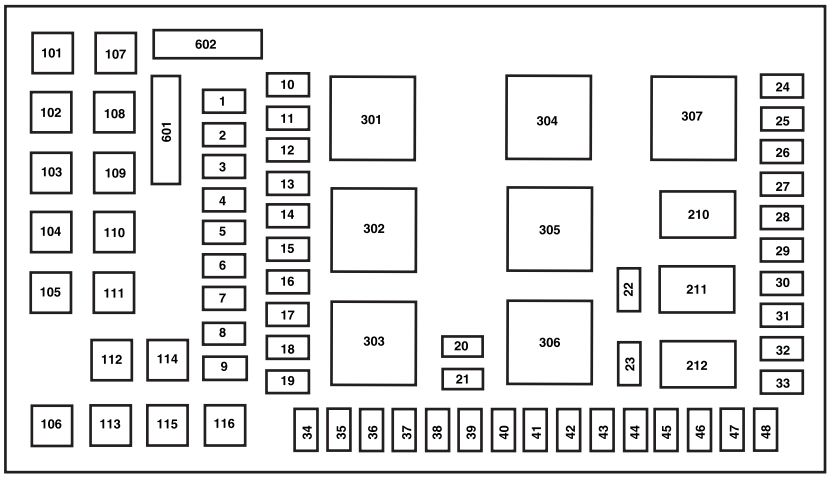


Always disconnect the battery before servicing high current fuses.

Always replace the cover to the passenger compartment fuse panel before reconnecting the battery.

If the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, refer to the *Battery* section of the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



The fuses are coded as follows.

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Passenger Compartment Fuse Panel Description
1	15A*	Adjustable pedals
2	10A*	Cluster
3	10A*	Upfitter #3
4	20A*	Power point (Instrument panel)
5	10A*	Upfitter #4
6	—	Not used
7	30A*	High beam headlamps, Flash-to-pass
8	20A*	Back-up lamps
9	—	Not used
10	—	Not used
11	20A*	Radio (Main)
12	20A*	Cigar lighter, OBD II
13	5A*	Power mirrors
14	—	Not used

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Passenger Compartment Fuse Panel Description
15	—	Not used
16	—	Not used
17	15A*	Exterior lamps
18	20A*	Flasher, Brake On-Off (BOO) lamps
19	10A*	Body Security Module (BSM) (Security)
20	15A*	Trailer tow Electric Brake Controller (EBC)
21	20A*	Heated seats
22	20A*	Engine control
23	20A*	Engine control (gasoline engine only)/Climate control (Diesel engine only)
24	15A*	Tow haul, Blower relay, Electronic Automatic Temperature Control (EATC)
25	—	Not used
26	10A*	Air bags
27	15A*	Ignition switch RUN feed
28	10A*	Trailer tow EBC logic
29	10A*	Customer access
30	15A*	High beam headlamps
31	15A*	4x4
32	5A*	Radio (start)
33	15A*	Cluster, 4x4, Wipers
34	10A*	BOO switch (Low current)
35	10A*	Instrument cluster
36	—	Not used
37	15A*	Horn
38	20A*	Trailer tow park lamps
39	15A*	Heated mirrors

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Passenger Compartment Fuse Panel Description
40	20A*	Fuel pump
41	10A*	Instrument cluster
42	15A*	Delayed accessory
43	10A*	Fog lamps
44	—	Not used
45	10A*	Ignition switch RUN/START feed
46	10A*	Left-hand low beam headlamp
47	10A*	Right-hand low beam headlamp
48	—	Not used
101	30A**	Trailer tow EBC
102	30A**	BSM (Door locks)
103	30A**	Ignition switch
104	—	Not used
105	—	Not used
106	—	Not used
107	20A**	Trailer tow battery charge
108	30A**	Upfitter #1
109	30A**	Upfitter #2
110	30A**	Ignition switch
111	—	Not used
112	30A**	Power seat (Driver)
113	30A**	Starter
114	30A**	Power seat (Passenger)
115	20A**	Upfitter control
116	30A**	Ignition switch
210	—	Not used
211	½ ISO relay	Back-up lamps
212	—	Not used
301	Full ISO relay	Trailer tow battery charge
302	Full ISO relay	Powertrain Control Module (PCM)
303	—	Not used

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Passenger Compartment Fuse Panel Description
304	—	Not used
305	Full ISO relay	Upfitter control
306	Full ISO relay	Delayed accessory
307	Full ISO relay	Starter
601	30A circuit breaker	Delayed accessory, Power windows, Moonroof
602	—	Not used
* Mini fuse ** Cartridge fuse		

Power distribution box

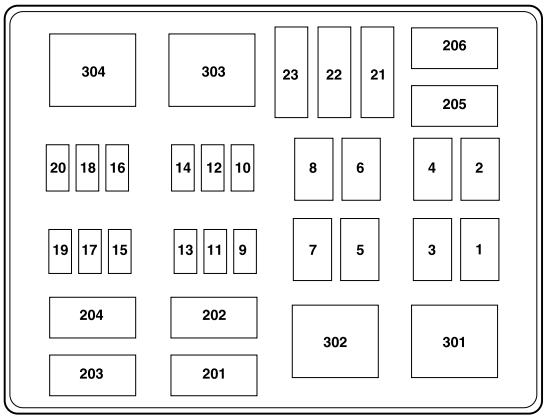
The power distribution box is located in the engine compartment. The power distribution box contains high-current fuses that protect your vehicle's main electrical systems from overloads.

Always disconnect the battery before servicing high current fuses.

To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the Power Distribution Box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.

If the battery has been disconnected and reconnected, refer to the *Battery* section of the *Maintenance and Specifications* chapter.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



The high-current fuses and relays are coded as follows.

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Power Distribution Box Description
1	30A*	Wipers
2	40A*	Blower
3	30A*	Electronic Shift on the Fly (ESOF)
4	—	Not used
5	50A*	Injector Driver Module (IDM) (Diesel engine only)
6	—	Not used
7	30A*	Horizontal Fuel Conditioner Module (HFCM) (Diesel engine only)
8	—	Not used
9	20A**	Trailer tow turn signals
10	10A**	Powertrain Control Module (PCM) keep alive power, Canister vent solenoid (gasoline engine only)
11	10A**	Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Fuse/Relay Location	Fuse Amp Rating	Power Distribution Box Description
12	2A**	Brake pressure switch
13	15A**	Daytime Running Lamps (DRL)
14	—	Not used
15	15A**	IDM logic (Diesel engine only)
16	—	Not used
17	10A**	A/C clutch
18	10A**	IDM relay (Diesel engine only)
19	—	Not used
20	10A**	Trailer tow back-up lamps
21	—	Not used
22	60A***	ABS (Coils)
23	60A***	ABS (Pump)
201	½ ISO relay	Trailer tow right turn signal/stop lamp
202	½ ISO relay	Trailer tow left turn signal/stop lamp
203	½ ISO relay	A/C clutch
204	—	Not used
205	½ ISO relay	DRL #1
206	½ ISO relay	DRL #2
301	Full ISO relay	DRL #3
302	Full ISO relay	HFCM
303	Full ISO relay	Blower
304	High-current relay	IDM (Diesel engine only)
* Cartdrige Fuse ** Mini Fuses *** Maxi fuse		

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

JUMP STARTING YOUR VEHICLE

The gases around the battery can explode if exposed to flames, sparks, or lit cigarettes. An explosion could result in injury or vehicle damage.

Batteries contain sulfuric acid which can burn skin, eyes and clothing, if contacted.

Do not attempt to push-start your vehicle. Automatic transmissions do not have push-start capability; doing so may damage the catalytic converter.

Preparing your vehicle

When the battery is disconnected or a new battery is installed, the transmission must relearn its shift strategy. As a result, the transmission may have firm and/or soft shifts. This operation is considered normal and will not affect function or durability of the transmission. Over time, the adaptive learning process will fully update transmission operation.

1. **Use only a 12–volt supply to start your vehicle.**

2. Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle as this could damage the vehicle's electrical system.

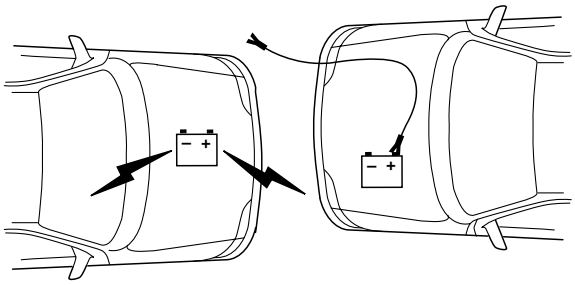
3. Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle making sure the two vehicles **do not** touch. Set the parking brake on both vehicles and stay clear of the engine cooling fan and other moving parts.

4. Check all battery terminals and remove any excessive corrosion before you attach the battery cables. Ensure that vent caps are tight and level.

5. Turn the heater fan on in both vehicles to protect any electrical surges. Turn all other accessories off.

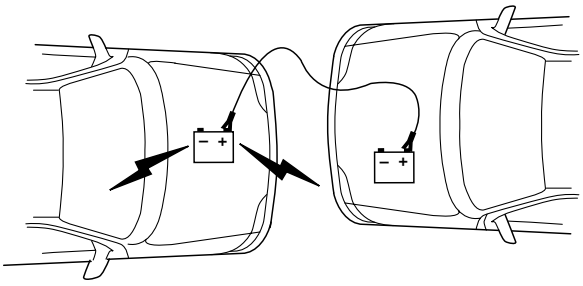
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Connecting the jumper cables



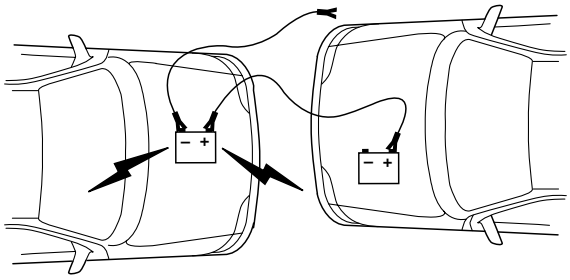
1. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the discharged battery.

Note: In the illustrations, *lightning bolts* are used to designate the assisting (boosting) battery.

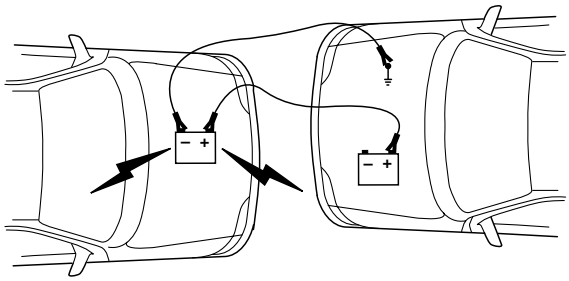


2. Connect the other end of the positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal of the assisting battery.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



3. Connect the negative (-) cable to the negative (-) terminal of the assisting battery.



4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) cable to an exposed metal part of the stalled vehicle's engine, away from the battery and the carburetor/fuel injection system. **Do not** use fuel lines, engine rocker covers or the intake manifold as *grounding* points.

Do not connect the end of the second cable to the negative (-) terminal of the battery to be jumped. A spark may cause an explosion of the gases that surround the battery.

5. Ensure that the cables are clear of fan blades, belts, moving parts of both engines, or any fuel delivery system parts.

Jump starting

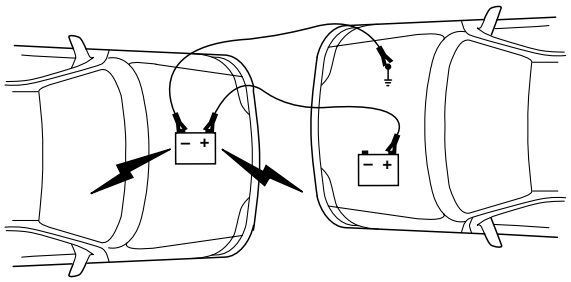
1. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and run the engine at moderately increased speed.

2. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

3. Once the disabled vehicle has been started, run both engines for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

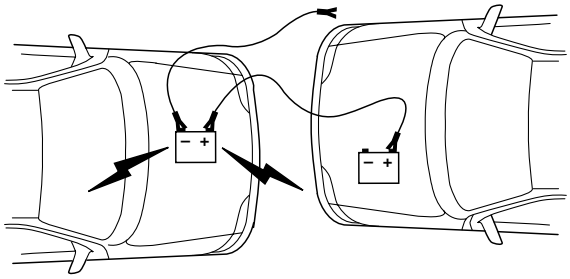
Removing the jumper cables



Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.

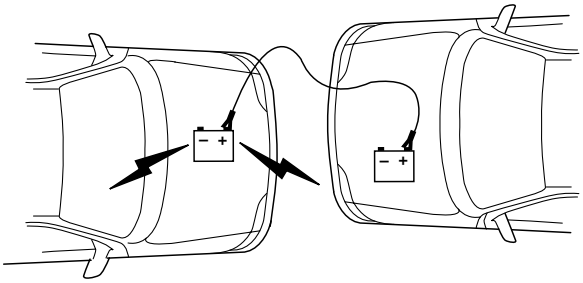
1. Remove the jumper cable from the *ground* metal surface.

Note: In the illustrations, *lightning bolts* are used to designate the assisting (boosting) battery.

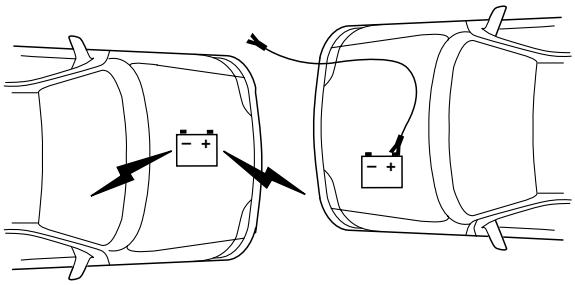


2. Remove the jumper cable on the negative (-) connection of the booster vehicle's battery.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS



3. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle's battery.

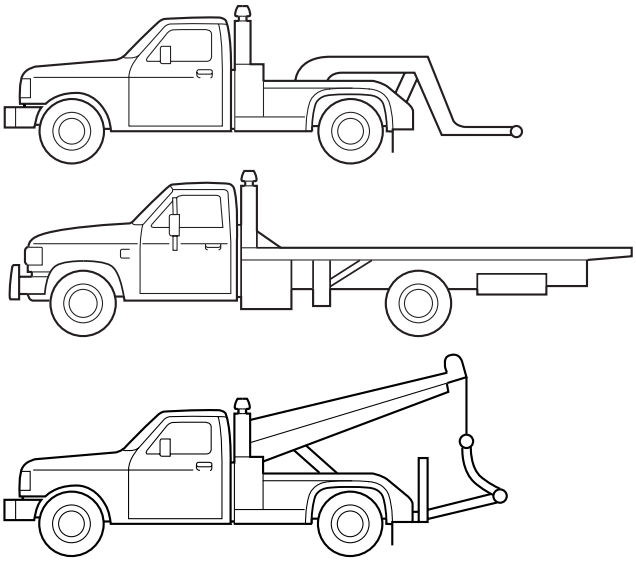


4. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the disabled vehicle's battery.

After the disabled vehicle has been started and the jumper cables removed, allow it to idle for several minutes so the engine computer can *relearn* its idle conditions.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

WRECKER TOWING



If you need to have your vehicle towed, contact a professional towing service or, if you are a member of a roadside assistance program, your roadside assistance service provider.

On 4x2 vehicles, it is acceptable to tow the vehicle with the front wheels on the ground and the rear wheels off the ground using a wheel lift

On 4x4 vehicles, it is recommended that your vehicle be towed using flatbed equipment with all the wheels off the ground. However, a wheel lift may be used to lift the rear of the vehicle so long as, depending on vehicle configurations, the following preparations are met:

- On Electronic Shift-On-the-Fly (ESOF) vehicles, the 4WD control is turned to the 2WD position prior to towing.
- On manual-shift transfer case vehicles, the transfer case shift lever is in the N (Neutral) position and the front wheel hub locks are in the UNLOCKED position prior to towing.

Note: On Dual Rear Wheel (DRW) vehicles, an outer rear wheel must be removed prior to using a wheel lift wrecker.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

If the vehicle is towed by other means or incorrectly, vehicle damage may occur.

Ford Motor Company produces a towing manual for all authorized tow truck operators. Have your tow truck operator refer to this manual for proper hook-up and towing procedures for your vehicle.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

GETTING THE SERVICES YOU NEED

At home

You must take your Ford vehicle to an authorized Ford dealer for warranty repairs. While any Ford dealership handling your vehicle line will provide warranty service, we recommend you return to your selling dealer who wants to ensure your continued satisfaction. Please note that certain warranty repairs require special training and/or equipment, so not all dealers are authorized to perform all warranty repairs. This means that, depending on the warranty repair needed, you may have to take your vehicle to another dealer. A reasonable time must be allowed to perform a repair after taking your vehicle to the dealership. Repairs will be made using Ford or Motorcraft parts, or remanufactured or other parts that are authorized by Ford.

If you have questions or concerns, or are unsatisfied with the service you are receiving, follow these steps:

1. Contact your Sales Representative or Service Advisor at your selling/servicing dealership.

2. If your inquiry or concern remains unresolved, contact the Sales Manager, Service Manager or Customer Relations Manager.

3. If you require assistance or clarification on Ford Motor Company policies or procedures, please contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center at 1-800-392-3673 (FORD).

Away from home

If you own a Ford or Mercury vehicle and are away from home when your vehicle needs service, or if you need more help than the dealership could provide, after following the steps described above, contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center to find an authorized dealership to help you.

In the United States:

Ford Motor Company
Customer Relationship Center
P.O. Box 6248
Dearborn, MI 48121
1-800-392-3673 (FORD)
(TDD for the hearing impaired: 1-800-232-5952)
www.customersaskford.com

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

In Canada:
Customer Relationship Centre
Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited
P.O. Box 2000
Oakville, Ontario L6J 5E4
1-800-565-3673 (FORD)
www.ford.ca

If you own a Lincoln vehicle and are away from home when your vehicle needs service, or if you need more help than the dealership could provide, after following the steps described above, contact the Ford Customer Relationship Center to find an authorized dealership to help you.

In the United States:
Ford Motor Company
Customer Relationship Center
P.O. Box 6248
Dearborn, MI 48121
1-800-521-4140
(TDD for the hearing impaired: 1-800-232-5952)
www.customersaskford.com

In Canada:
Lincoln Centre
Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited
P.O. Box 2000
Oakville, Ontario L6J 5E4
1-800-387-9333
www.lincolncanada.com

In order to help you service your Lincoln vehicle, please have the following information available when contacting the Lincoln Centre:

- Your telephone number (home and business)
- The name of the dealer and the city where the dealership is located
- The year and make of your vehicle
- The date of vehicle purchase
- The current odometer reading
- The vehicle identification number (VIN)

Additional Assistance

If you still have a complaint involving a warranty dispute, you may wish to contact the Dispute Settlement Board (U.S.).

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

In some states (in the U.S.) you must directly notify Ford in writing before pursuing remedies under your state's warranty laws. Ford is also allowed a final repair attempt in some states.

In the United States, a warranty dispute must be submitted to the Dispute Settlement Board before taking action under the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act, or to the extent allowed by state law, before pursuing replacement or repurchase remedies provided by certain state laws. This dispute handling procedure is not required prior to enforcing state created rights or other rights which are independent of the Magnuson-Moss Warranty Act or state replacement or repurchase laws.

IN CALIFORNIA (U.S. ONLY)

California Civil Code Section 1793.2(d) requires that, if a manufacturer or its representative is unable to repair a motor vehicle to conform to the vehicle's applicable express warranty after a reasonable number of attempts, the manufacturer shall be required to either replace the vehicle with one substantially identical or repurchase the vehicle and reimburse the buyer in an amount equal to the actual price paid or payable by the consumer (less a reasonable allowance for consumer use). The consumer has the right to choose whether to receive a refund or replacement vehicle.

California Civil Code Section 1793.22(b) presumes that the manufacturer has had a reasonable number of attempts to conform the vehicle to its applicable express warranties if, within the first 18 months of ownership of a new vehicle or the first 18,000 miles (29,000 km), whichever occurs first:

1. Two or more repair attempts are made on the same non-conformity likely to cause death or serious bodily injury OR

2. Four or more repair attempts are made on the same nonconformity (a defect or condition that substantially impairs the use, value or safety of the vehicle) OR

3. The vehicle is out of service for repair of nonconformities for a total of more than 30 calendar days (not necessarily all at one time)

In the case of 1 or 2 above, the consumer must also notify the manufacturer of the need for the repair of the nonconformity at the following address:

Ford Motor Company
16800 Executive Plaza Drive
Mail Drop 3NE-B
Dearborn, MI 48126

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

THE DISPUTE SETTLEMENT BOARD (U.S. ONLY)

The Dispute Settlement Board is:

- an independent, third-party arbitration program for warranty disputes.
- available free to owners and lessees of qualifying Ford Motor Company vehicles.

The Dispute Settlement Board may not be available in all states. Ford Motor Company reserves the right to change eligibility limitations, modify procedures and/or to discontinue this service without notice and without incurring obligations per applicable state law.

What kinds of cases does the Board review?

Unresolved warranty repair concerns or vehicle performance concerns as on Ford and Lincoln/Mercury cars and Ford and Lincoln/Mercury light trucks which are within the terms of any applicable written new vehicle warranty are eligible for review, except those involving:

- a non-Ford product
- a non-Ford dealership
- sales disputes between customer and dealer except those associated with warranty repairs or concerns with the vehicle's performance as designed
- a request for reimbursement of consequential expenses unless a service or product concern is being reviewed
- items not covered by the New Vehicle Limited Warranty (including maintenance and wear items)
- alleged personal injury/property damage claims
- cases currently in litigation
- vehicles not used primarily for family, personal or household purposes (except in states where the Dispute Settlement Board is required to review commercial vehicles)
- vehicles with non-U.S. warranties

Concerns are ineligible for review if the New Vehicle Limited Warranty has expired at receipt of your application and, in certain states eligibility is dependent upon the customer's possession of the vehicle.

Eligibility may differ according to state law. For example, see the unique brochures for California, West Virginia, Georgia and Wisconsin purchasers/lessees.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Board membership

The Board consists of:

- Three consumer representatives
- A Ford or Lincoln/Mercury dealership representative

Consumer candidates for Board membership are recruited and trained by an independent consulting firm. The dealership Board member is chosen from Ford and Lincoln/Mercury dealership management, recognized for their business leadership qualities.

What the Board needs

To have your case reviewed you must complete the application in the DSB brochure and mail it to the address provided on the application form. Some states will require you to use certified mail, with return receipt requested.

Your application is reviewed and, if it is determined to be eligible, you will receive an acknowledgment indicating:

- The file number assigned to your application.
- The toll-free phone number of the DSB's independent administrator.

Your dealership and a Ford Motor Company representative will then be asked to submit statements.

To properly review your case, the Board needs the following information:

- Legible copies of all documents and maintenance or repair orders relevant to the case.
- The year, make, model, and Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) listed on your vehicle ownership license.
- The date of repair(s) and mileage at the time of occurrence(s).
- The current mileage.
- The name of the dealer(s) who sold or serviced the vehicle.
- A brief description of your unresolved concern.
- A brief summary of the action taken by the dealer(s) and Ford Motor Company.
- The names (if known) of all the people you contacted at the dealership(s).
- A description of the action you expect to resolve your concern.

You will receive a letter of explanation if your application does not qualify for Board review.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Oral presentations

If you would like to make an oral presentation, indicate YES to question 6 on the application. While it is your right to make an oral presentation before the Board, this is not a requirement and the Board will decide the case whether or not an oral presentation is made. An oral presentation may be requested by the Board as well.

Making a decision

Board members review all available information related to each complaint, including oral presentations, and arrive at a fair and impartial decision. Board review may be terminated at any time by either party.

Every effort is made to decide the case within 40 days of the date that all requested information is received by the Board. Since the Board generally meets once a month, it may take longer for the Board to consider some cases.

After a case is reviewed, the Board mails you a decision letter and a form on which to accept or reject the Board's decision. The decisions of the Board are binding on Ford (and, in some cases, on the dealer) but not on consumers who are free to pursue other remedies available to them under state or federal law.

To request a DSB Brochure/Application

For a brochure/application, speak to your dealer or write/call the Board at the following address/phone number:

Dispute Settlement Board
P.O. Box 1424
Waukesha, WI 53187–1424
1–800–428–3718

You may also contact the North American Customer Relationship Center at 1-800-392-3673 (Ford), TDD for the hearing impaired: 1-800-232-5952 or by writing to the Center at the following address:

Ford Motor Company
Customer Relationship Center
P.O. Box 6248
Dearborn, Michigan 48121

UTILIZING THE MEDIATION/ARBITRATION PROGRAM (CANADA ONLY)

In those cases where you continue to feel that the efforts by Ford of Canada and the dealer to resolve a factory-related vehicle service

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

concern have been unsatisfactory, Ford of Canada participates in an impartial third party mediation/arbitration program administered by the Canadian Motor Vehicle Arbitration Plan (CAMVAP).

The CAMVAP program is a straight-forward and relatively speedy alternative to resolve a disagreement when all other efforts to produce a settlement have failed. This procedure is without cost to you and is designed to eliminate the need for lengthy and expensive legal proceedings.

In the CAMVAP program, impartial third-party arbitrators conduct hearings at mutually convenient times and places in an informal environment. These impartial arbitrators review the positions of the parties, make decisions and, when appropriate, render awards to resolve disputes. CAMVAP decisions are fast, fair, and final as the arbitrator's award is binding both to you and Ford of Canada.

CAMVAP services are available in all territories and provinces. For more information, without charge or obligation, call your CAMVAP Provincial Administrator directly at 1-800-207-0685.

FORD EXTENDED SERVICE PLAN

You can get more protection for your new car or light truck by purchasing Ford Extended Service Plan (Ford ESP) coverage. It provides the following:

- Benefits during the warranty period depending on the plan you purchase (such as: reimbursement for rentals; coverage for certain maintenance and wear items).
- Protection against covered repair costs after your Bumper-to-Bumper Warranty expires.

You may purchase Ford ESP from any participating Ford and Lincoln/Mercury and Ford of Canada dealer. There are several plans available in various time, distance and deductible combinations which can be tailored to fit your own driving needs. Ford ESP also offers reimbursement benefits for towing and rental coverage.

When you buy Ford ESP, you receive Peace-of-Mind protection throughout the United States and Canada, provided by a network of more than 4,600 participating Ford or Lincoln/Mercury and Ford of Canada dealers.

If you did not take advantage of the Ford Extended Service Plan at the time of purchasing your vehicle, you may still be eligible. Since this information is subject to change, please ask your dealer for complete

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

details about Ford Extended Service Plan coverage options, or visit the Ford ESP website at www.ford-esp.com.

GETTING ASSISTANCE OUTSIDE THE U.S. AND CANADA

Before exporting your vehicle to a foreign country, contact the appropriate foreign embassy or consulate. These officials can inform you of local vehicle registration regulations and where to find unleaded fuel.

If you cannot find unleaded fuel or can only get fuel with an anti-knock index lower than is recommended for your vehicle, contact a regional office or owner relations/customer relationship office.

The use of leaded fuel in your vehicle without proper conversion may damage the effectiveness of your emission control system and may cause engine knocking or serious engine damage. Ford Motor Company/Ford of Canada is not responsible for any damage caused by use of improper fuel. Using leaded fuel may also result in difficulty importing your vehicle back into the U.S.

If your vehicle must be serviced while you are traveling or living in Central or South America, the Caribbean, or the Middle East, contact the nearest Ford dealership. If the dealership cannot help you, write or call:

FORD MOTOR COMPANY
WORLDWIDE DIRECT MARKET OPERATIONS
1555 Fairlane Drive
Fairlane Business Park #3
Allen Park, Michigan 48101
U.S.A.
Telephone: (313) 594-4857
FAX: (313) 390-0804

If you are in another foreign country, contact the nearest Ford dealership. If the dealership employees cannot help you, they can direct you to the nearest Ford affiliate office.

If you buy your vehicle in North America and then relocate outside of the U.S. or Canada, register your vehicle identification number (VIN) and new address with Ford Motor Company Worldwide Direct Market Operations.

ORDERING ADDITIONAL OWNER'S LITERATURE

To order the publications in this portfolio, contact Helm, Incorporated at:

HELM, INCORPORATED
P.O. Box 07150
Detroit, Michigan 48207

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Or call:

For a free publication catalog, order toll free: 1-800-782-4356

Monday-Friday 8:00 a.m. - 6:00 p.m. EST

Helm, Incorporated can also be reached by their website: www.helminc.com.

(Items in this catalog may be purchased by credit card, check or money order.)

Obtaining a French owner's guide

French Owner's Guides can be obtained from your dealer or by writing to Ford Motor Company of Canada, Limited, Service Publications, P.O. Box 1580, Station B, Mississauga, Ontario L4Y 4G3.

REPORTING SAFETY DEFECTS (U.S. ONLY)

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) in addition to notifying Ford Motor Company.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Ford Motor Company.

To contact NHTSA, you may either call the Auto Safety Hotline toll-free at 1–800–424–9393 (or 366–0123 in the Washington D.C. area) or write to:

NHTSA
400 Seventh Street
U.S. Department of Transportation
Washington, D.C. 20590

You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from the Hotline.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Cleaning

WASHING THE EXTERIOR

Wash your vehicle regularly with cool or lukewarm water and a neutral Ph shampoo, such as Motorcraft Detail Wash (ZC-3–A), which is available from your dealer.

- Never use strong household detergents or soap, such as dish washing or laundry liquid. These products can discolor and spot painted surfaces.
- Never wash a vehicle that is “hot to the touch” or during exposure to strong, direct sunlight.
- Always use a clean sponge or car wash mitt with plenty of water for best results.
- Dry the vehicle with a chamois or soft terry cloth towel in order to eliminate water spotting.
- It is especially important to wash the vehicle regularly during the winter months, as dirt and road salt are difficult to remove and cause damage to the vehicle.
- Immediately remove items such as gasoline, diesel fuel, bird droppings and insect deposits because they can cause damage to the vehicle’s paintwork and trim over time.
- Remove any exterior accessories, such as antennas, before entering a car wash.
- **Suntan lotions and insect repellents can damage any painted surface; if these substances come in contact with your vehicle, wash off as soon as possible.**
- **If your vehicle is equipped with running boards, do not use rubber, plastic and vinyl protectant products on the running board surface, as the area may become slippery.**

WAXING

Applying Motorcraft Paint Sealant (ZC-45) to your vehicle every six months will assist in reducing minor scratches and paint damage.

- Wash the vehicle first.
- Do not use waxes that contain abrasives.
- Do not allow paint sealant to come in contact with any non-body (low-gloss black) colored trim, such as grained door handles, roof racks, bumpers, side moldings, mirror housings or the windshield cowl area. The paint sealant will “gray” or stain the parts over time.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

PAINT CHIPS

Your dealer has touch-up paint and sprays to match your vehicle's color. Take your color code (printed on a sticker in the driver's door jam) to your dealer to ensure you get the correct color.

- Remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout before repairing paint chips.
- Always read the instructions before using the products.

ALUMINUM WHEELS AND WHEEL COVERS

Aluminum wheels and wheel covers are coated with a clearcoat paint finish. In order to maintain their shine:

- Clean weekly with Motorcraft Wheel and Tire Cleaner (ZC-37–A), which is available from your dealer. Heavy dirt and brake dust accumulation may require agitation with a sponge. Rinse thoroughly with a strong stream of water.
- Never apply any cleaning chemical to hot or warm wheel rims or covers.
- Some automatic car washes may cause damage to the finish on your wheel rims or covers. Chemical-strength cleaners, or cleaning chemicals, in combination with brush agitation to remove brake dust and dirt, could wear away the clearcoat finish over time.
- Do not use hydrofluoric acid-based or high caustic-based wheel cleaners, steel wool, fuels or strong household detergent.
- To remove tar and grease, use Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover (ZC-42), available from your dealer.

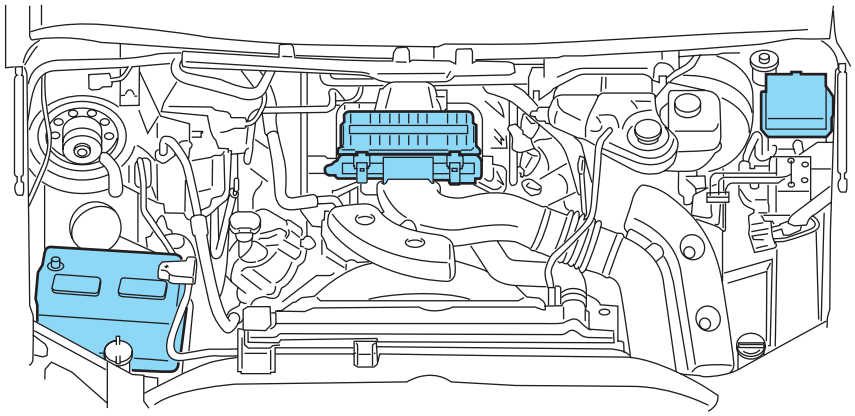
ENGINE

Engines are more efficient when they are clean because grease and dirt buildup keep the engine warmer than normal. When washing:

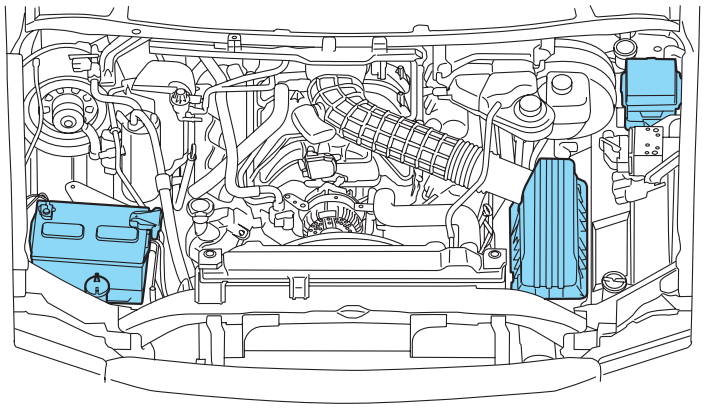
- Take care when using a power washer to clean the engine. The high-pressure fluid could penetrate the sealed parts and cause damage.
- Do not spray a hot engine with cold water to avoid cracking the engine block or other engine components.
- Spray Motorcraft Engine Shampoo and Degreaser (ZC-20) on all parts that require cleaning and pressure rinse clean.
- Never wash or rinse the engine while it is running; water in the running engine may cause internal damage.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

- Cover the highlighted areas to prevent water damage when cleaning the engine.



- **5.4L V8 gasoline engine**



- **6.8L V10 gasoline engine**

PLASTIC (NON-PAINTED) EXTERIOR PARTS

Use only approved products to clean plastic parts. These products are available from your dealer.

- For routine cleaning, use Motorcraft Detail Wash (ZC-3–A).

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

- If tar or grease spots are present, use Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover (ZC-42).

WINDOWS AND WIPER BLADES

The windshield, rear and side windows and the wiper blades should be cleaned regularly. If the wipers do not wipe properly, substances on the vehicle's glass or the wiper blades may be the cause. These may include hot wax treatments used by commercial car washes, tree sap, or other organic contamination. To clean these items, please follow these tips:

- The windshield, rear windows and side windows may be cleaned with a non-abrasive cleaner such as Motorcraft Ultra Clear Spray Glass Cleaner (ZC-23), available from your dealer.
- Do not use abrasives, as they may cause scratches.
- Do not use fuel, kerosene, or paint thinner to clean any parts.
- Wiper blades can be cleaned with isopropyl (rubbing) alcohol or windshield washer solution. Be sure to replace wiper blades when they appear worn or do not function properly.

INSTRUMENT PANEL AND CLUSTER LENS

Clean the instrument panel with a damp cloth, then dry with a dry cloth, or use Motorcraft Dash & Vinyl Cleaner (ZC-38-A).

- Avoid cleaners or polish that increase the gloss of the upper portion of the instrument panel. The dull finish in this area helps protect the driver from undesirable windshield reflection.

Do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents when cleaning the steering wheel or instrument panel to avoid contamination of the air bag system.

- Be certain to wash or wipe your hands clean if you have been in contact with certain products such as insect repellent and suntan lotion in order to avoid possible damage to the interior painted surfaces.

INTERIOR TRIM

- Clean the interior trim areas with a damp cloth, then dry by wiping with a dry, soft, clean cloth. You may also use Motorcraft Dash & Vinyl Cleaner (ZC-38-A).
- Do not use household or glass cleaners as these may damage the finish.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Cleaning

INTERIOR

For fabric, carpets, cloth seats and safety belts:

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
- Remove light stains and soil with Motorcraft Professional Strength Carpet & Upholstery Cleaner (ZC-54).
- If grease or tar is present on the material, spot-clean the area first with Motorcraft Spot and Stain Remover (ZC-14).
- If a ring forms on the fabric after spot cleaning, clean the entire area immediately (but do not oversaturate) or the ring will set.
- Do not use household cleaning products or glass cleaners, which can stain and discolor the fabric and affect the flame retardant abilities of the seat materials.

Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's seatbelts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.

LEATHER SEATS (IF EQUIPPED, EXCEPT FOR THE KING RANCH F–250 AND F–350 CREWCAB)

Your leather seating surfaces have a clear, protective coating over the leather.

For King Ranch F-250 and F-350 CrewCab leather seats, refer to separate section in this chapter.

- To clean, use a soft cloth with Motorcraft Deluxe Leather and Vinyl Cleaner (ZC-11–A). Dry the area with a soft cloth.
- To help maintain its resiliency and color, use the Motorcraft Deluxe Leather Care Kit (ZC-11–D), available from your authorized dealer.
- Do not use household cleaning products, alcohol solutions, solvents or cleaners intended for rubber, vinyl and plastics, or oil/petroleum-based leather conditioners. These products may cause premature wearing of the clear, protective coating on the seat.

Note: In some instances, color or dye transfer can occur when wet clothing comes in contact with leather upholstery. If this occurs, the leather should be cleaned immediately to avoid permanent staining.

LEATHER SEATS FOR THE KING RANCH F-250 AND F-350 CREWCAB ONLY (IF EQUIPPED)

Your vehicle is equipped with seating covered in premium, top-grain leather which is extremely durable, but still requires special care and maintenance in order to ensure longevity and comfort.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Regular cleaning and conditioning will maintain the appearance of the leather. Failure to care for the leather can result in drying out and fading of the material.

Cleaning

For dirt, use a vacuum cleaner then use a clean, damp cloth or soft brush.

First use a damp cloth then wipe with a dry cloth. Allow the area to dry, then apply conditioner.

- Clean spills as quickly as possible.
- Test any cleaner or stain remover on an inconspicuous part of the leather as cleaners may darken the leather. For more specific cleaning information, contact the King Ranch Saddle Shop at 1–800–282–KING (5464).
- Do not spill coffee, ketchup, mustard, orange juice or oil-based products on the leather as they may permanently stain the leather.
- Do not use household cleaning products, alcohol solutions, solvents or cleaners intended for rubber, vinyl or plastics.

Scratches

In order to lessen the appearance of certain scratches and other wear marks, apply conditioner on the affected area following the same instructions as in the *Conditioning* section.

Conditioning

Bottles of King Ranch Leather Conditioner are available at the King Ranch Saddle Shop. Visit the Web site at *www.krsaddleshop.com*, or telephone (in the United States) 1–800–282–KING (5464). If you are unable to obtain King Ranch Leather Conditioner, use another premium leather conditioner.

- Apply your first conditioning treatment within six months of taking delivery of your vehicle. Condition twice yearly in order to replenish lost oils and revitalize the aroma, suppleness and resilience of the leather.
- Clean the surfaces using the steps outlined in the *Cleaning* section.
- Ensure the leather is dry then apply a nickel-sized amount of conditioner to a clean, dry cloth
- Rub the conditioner into leather until it disappears. Allow the conditioner to dry and repeat the process for the entire interior. If a film appears, wipe off film with a dry, clean cloth.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Cleaning

UNDERBODY

Flush the complete underside of your vehicle frequently. Keep body and door drain holes free from packed dirt.

Note: Use care when using a power washer to clean the driveline, especially the driveshaft and interfacing components. The high-pressure fluid could penetrate the sealed parts and cause damage.

FORD AND LINCOLN/MERCURY CAR CARE PRODUCTS

Your Ford or Lincoln/Mercury dealer has many quality products available to clean your vehicle and protect its finishes. These quality products have been specifically engineered to fulfill your automotive needs; they are custom designed to complement the style and appearance of your vehicle. Each product is made from high quality materials that meet or exceed rigid specifications. For best results, use the following products or products of equivalent quality:

Motorcraft Custom Clearcoat Polish (ZC–8–A)

Motorcraft Custom Vinyl Protectant (U.S. only) (ZC-40-A)

Motorcraft Vinyl Cleaner (Canada only) (CXC-93)

Motorcraft Vinyl Conditioner (Canada only) (CXC-94)

Motorcraft Deluxe Leather and Vinyl Cleaner (U.S. only) (ZC-11–A)

Motorcraft Bug and Tar Remover (ZC-42)

Motorcraft Professional Strength Carpet & Upholstery Cleaner (ZC-54)

Motorcraft Custom Bright Metal Cleaner (ZC-15)

Motorcraft Wheel and Tire Cleaner (ZC-37–A)

Motorcraft Dash and Vinyl Cleaner (ZC-38–A)

Motorcraft Car Care Kit (ZC-26)

Motorcraft Premium Car Wash Concentrate (ZC-17-B)

Motorcraft Premium Glass Cleaner (Canada only) (CXC-100)

Motorcraft Spot and Stain Remover (ZC-14)

Motorcraft Detail Wash (ZC-3–A)

Motorcraft Tire Clean and Shine (ZC-28)

Motorcraft Triple Clean (ZC-13)

Motorcraft Ultra-Clear Spray Glass Cleaner (U.S. only) (ZC-23)

Motorcraft Engine Shampoo and Degreaser (ZC-20)

Motorcraft Paint Sealant (ZC-45)

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

SERVICE RECOMMENDATIONS

To help you service your vehicle:

- We highlight do-it-yourself items in the engine compartment for easy location.
- We provide a *scheduled maintenance guide* which makes tracking routine service easy.

If your vehicle requires professional service, your dealership can provide the necessary parts and service. Check your *Warranty Guide/Owner Information Guide* to find out which parts and services are covered.

Use only recommended fuels, lubricants, fluids and service parts conforming to specifications. Motorcraft parts are designed and built to provide the best performance in your vehicle.

PRECAUTIONS WHEN SERVICING YOUR VEHICLE

- Do not work on a hot engine.
- Make sure that nothing gets caught in moving parts.
- Do not work on a vehicle with the engine running in an enclosed space, unless you are sure you have enough ventilation.
- Keep all open flames and other burning (cigarettes) material away from the battery and all fuel related parts.

Working with the engine off

- Automatic transmission:

1. Set the parking brake and shift to P (Park).
2. Turn off the engine and remove the key.
3. Block the wheels.

- Manual transmission:

1. Set the parking brake, depress the clutch and place the gearshift in 1 (First).
2. Turn off the engine and remove the key.
3. Block the wheels.

Working with the engine on

- Automatic transmission:

1. Set the parking brake and shift to P (Park).
2. Block the wheels.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

- Manual transmission:

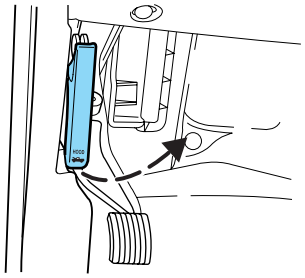
1. Set the parking brake, depress the clutch and place the gearshift in N (Neutral).

2. Block the wheels.

Note: Do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

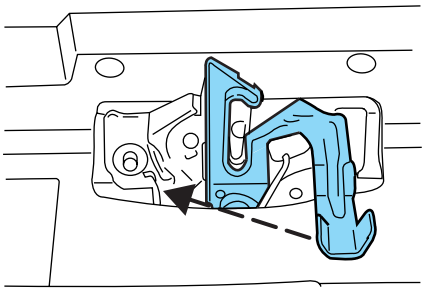
OPENING THE HOOD

1. Inside the vehicle, pull the hood release handle located under the bottom left corner of the instrument panel.



2. Go to the front of the vehicle and release the auxiliary latch located under the right center of the hood. Slide the handle to release the auxiliary latch.

3. Lift the hood until the lift cylinders hold it open.

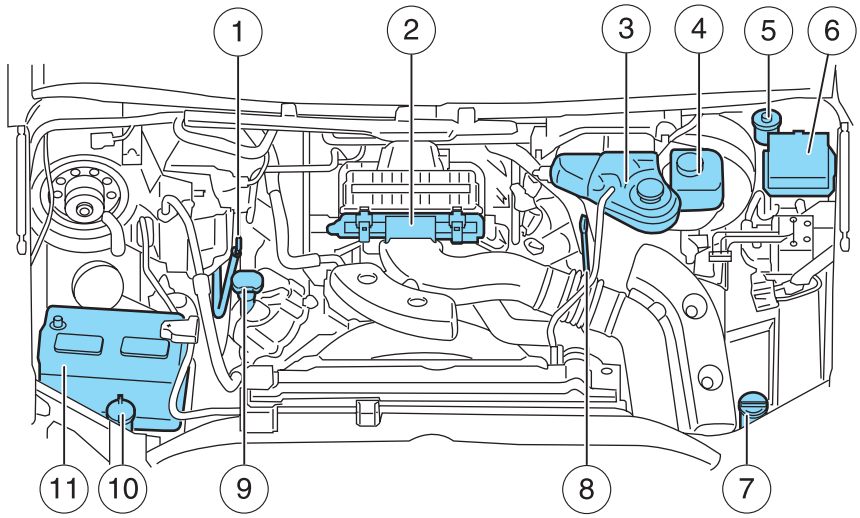


DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

IDENTIFYING COMPONENTS IN THE ENGINE COMPARTMENT

5.4L V8 gasoline engines

Refer to the *6.0 Liter Power Stroke Direct Injection Turbo Diesel Owner's Guide Supplement* for diesel engine component locations.

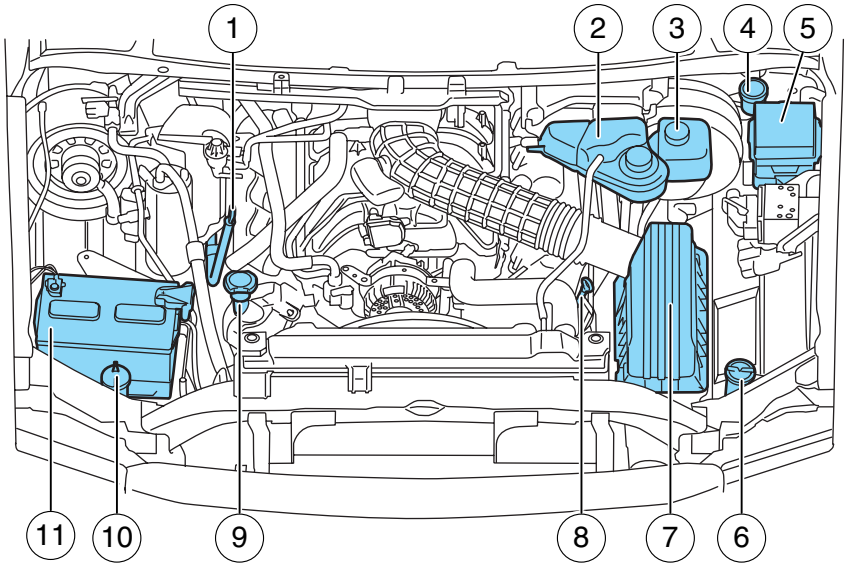


1. Transmission fluid dipstick (automatic transmission)
2. Air filter assembly
3. Engine coolant reservoir
4. Brake fluid reservoir
5. Clutch fluid reservoir (manual transmission)
6. Underhood relay box
7. Power steering fluid reservoir
8. Engine oil dipstick
9. Engine oil filler cap
10. Windshield washer fluid reservoir
11. Battery

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

6.8L V10 gasoline engine

Refer to the *6.0 Liter Power Stroke Direct Injection Turbo Diesel Owner's Guide Supplement* for diesel engine component locations.



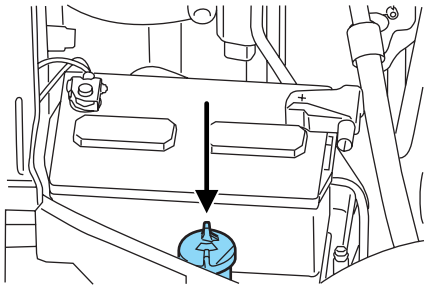
1. Transmission fluid dipstick (automatic transmission)
2. Engine coolant reservoir
3. Brake fluid reservoir
4. Clutch fluid reservoir (manual transmission)
5. Underhood relay box
6. Power steering fluid reservoir
7. Air filter assembly
8. Engine oil dipstick
9. Engine oil filler cap
10. Windshield washer fluid reservoir
11. Battery

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

WINDSHIELD WASHER FLUID

Add fluid to fill the reservoir if the level is low. In very cold weather, do not fill the reservoir completely.

Only use a washer fluid that meets Ford specification WSB-M8B16–A2. Refer to *Lubricant specifications* in this chapter.



State or local regulations on volatile organic compounds may restrict the use of methanol, a common windshield washer antifreeze additive. Washer fluids containing non-methanol antifreeze agents should be used only if they provide cold weather protection without damaging the vehicle's paint finish, wiper blades or washer system.

If you operate your vehicle in temperatures below 40° F (4.5°C), use washer fluid with antifreeze protection. Failure to use washer fluid with antifreeze protection in cold weather could result in impaired windshield vision and increase the risk of injury or accident.

Note: Do not put washer fluid in the engine coolant reservoir. Washer fluid placed in the cooling system may harm engine and cooling system components.

ENGINE OIL

Checking the engine oil

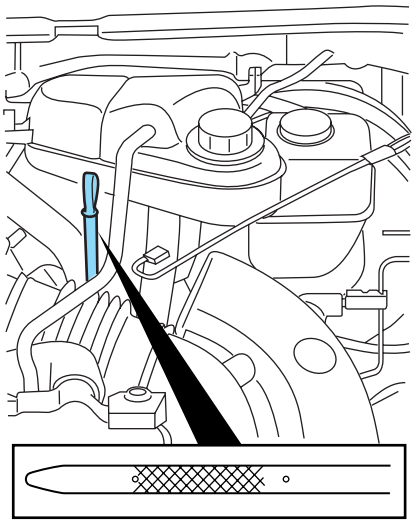
Refer to the scheduled maintenance guide for the appropriate intervals for checking the engine oil.

1. Make sure the vehicle is on level ground.
2. Turn the engine off and wait a few minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan.
3. Set the parking brake and ensure the gearshift is securely latched in P (Park) (automatic transmission) or 1 (First) (manual transmission).
4. Open the hood. Protect yourself from engine heat.

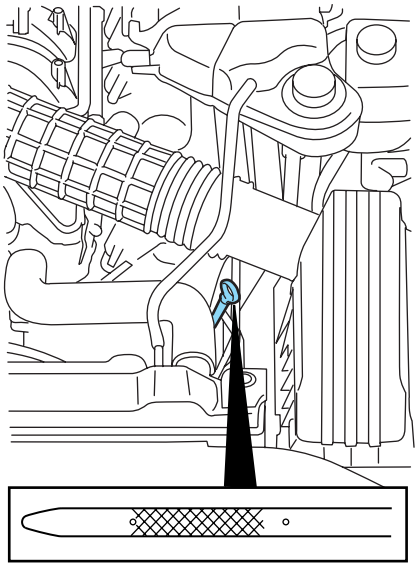
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

5. Locate and carefully remove the engine oil level indicator (dipstick).

- 5.4L V8 engine



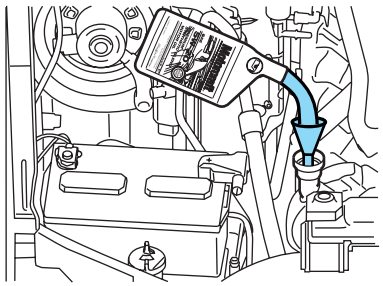
- 6.8L V10 engine



DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

6. Wipe the indicator clean. Insert the indicator fully, then remove it again.

- If the oil level is **between the MIN and MAX marks,** the oil level is acceptable. **DO NOT ADD OIL.**
- If the oil level is below the MIN mark, add enough oil to raise the level within the MIN-MAX range.



- Oil levels above the MAX mark may cause engine damage. Some oil must be removed from the engine by a service technician.

7. Put the indicator back in and ensure it is fully seated.

Adding engine oil

1. Check the engine oil. For instructions, refer to *Checking the engine oil* in this chapter.

2. If the engine oil level is not within the normal range, add only certified engine oil of the recommended viscosity. Remove the engine oil filler cap and use a funnel to pour the engine oil into the opening.

3. Recheck the engine oil level. Make sure the oil level is not above the MAX mark on the engine oil level indicator (dipstick).

4. Install the indicator and ensure it is fully seated.

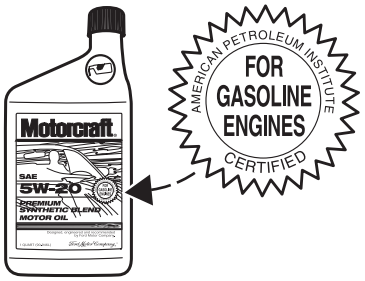
5. Fully install the engine oil filler cap by turning the filler cap clockwise 1/4 of a turn or until the cap is fully seated.

To avoid possible oil loss, DO NOT operate the vehicle with the engine oil level indicator and/or the engine oil filler cap removed.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Engine oil and filter recommendations

Look for this certification trademark.



Use SAE 5W-20 engine oil.

Only use oils "Certified For Gasoline Engines" by the American Petroleum Institute (API). An oil with this trademark symbol conforms to the current engine and emission system protection standards and fuel economy requirements of the International Lubricant Standardization and Approval Committee (ISLAC), comprised of U.S. and Japanese automobile manufacturers.

To protect your engine's warranty use Motorcraft SAE 5W-20 or an equivalent 5W-20 oil meeting Ford specification WSS-M2C930-A. **SAE 5W-20 oil provides optimum fuel economy and durability performance meeting all requirements for your vehicle's engine**.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives, cleaners or other engine treatments. They are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that is not covered by Ford warranty.

Change your engine oil and filter according to the appropriate schedule listed in the scheduled maintenance guide.

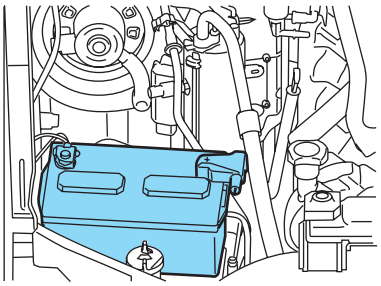
Ford production and aftermarket (Motorcraft) oil filters are designed for added engine protection and long life. If a replacement oil filter is used that does not meet Ford material and design specifications, start-up engine noises or knock may be experienced.

It is recommended you use the appropriate Motorcraft oil filter (or another brand meeting Ford specifications) for your engine application.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

BATTERY

Your vehicle is equipped with a Motorcraft maintenance-free battery which normally does not require additional water during its life of service.



However, for severe usage or in high temperature climates, check the battery electrolyte level. Refer to the *Scheduled Maintenance Guide* for the service interval schedules.

Keep the electrolyte level in each cell up to the "level indicator". Do not overfill the battery cells.

If the electrolyte level in the battery is low, you can add plain tap water to the battery, as long as you do not use hard water (water with a high mineral or alkali content). If possible, however, try to only fill the battery cells with distilled water. If the battery needs water often, have the charging system checked.

If your battery has a cover/shield, make sure it is reinstalled after the battery has been cleaned or replaced.

For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry. Also, make certain the battery cables are always tightly fastened to the battery terminals.

If you see any corrosion on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.

When the battery is disconnected or a new battery installed, the transmission must learn its adaptive strategy. As a result of this, the transmission may shift firmly. This operation is considered normal and will fully update transmission operation to its optimum shift feel.

Note: Electrical or electronic accessories or components added to the vehicle by the dealer or the owner may adversely affect battery performance and durability.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide proper ventilation.

When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and/or damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.

Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.

Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. **Wash hands after handling**.

For information on transmission operation after the battery has been disconnected, refer to *Shift strategy* in the *Driving* chapter.

Because your vehicle's engine is also electronically controlled by a computer, some control conditions are maintained by power from the battery. When the battery is disconnected or a new battery is installed, the engine must relearn its idle and fuel trim strategy for optimum driveability and performance. To begin this process:

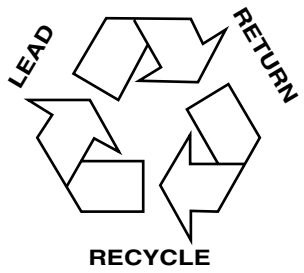
1. With the vehicle at a complete stop, set the parking brake.
2. Put the gearshift in P (Park) (automatic transmission) or the neutral position (manual transmission), turn off all accessories and start the engine.
3. Run the engine until it reaches normal operating temperature.
4. Allow the engine to idle for at least one minute.
5. Turn the A/C on and allow the engine to idle for at least one minute.
6. Drive the vehicle to complete the relearning process.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

- The vehicle may need to be driven 10 miles (16 km) or more to relearn the idle and fuel trim strategy.
- **If you do not allow the engine to relearn its idle trim, the idle quality of your vehicle may be adversely affected until the idle trim is eventually relearned.**

If the battery has been disconnected or a new battery has been installed, the clock and the preset radio stations must be reset once the battery is reconnected.

- Always dispose of automotive batteries in a responsible manner. Follow your local authorized standards for disposal. Call your local authorized recycling center to find out more about recycling automotive batteries.



ENGINE COOLANT

Checking engine coolant

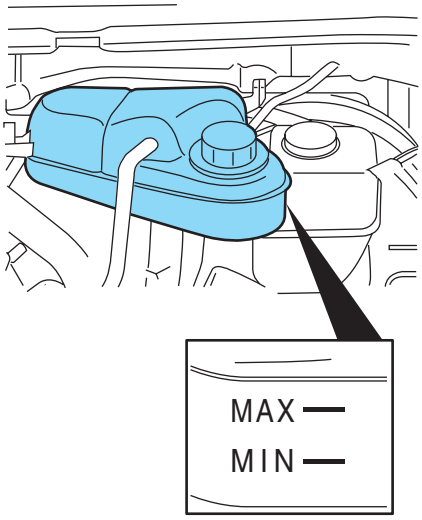
The concentration and level of engine coolant should be checked at the mileage intervals listed in the *Scheduled Maintenance Guide*. The coolant concentration should be maintained at 50/50 coolant and distilled water, which equates to a freeze point of -34°F (-36°C). Coolant concentration testing is possible with a hydrometer or antifreeze tester (such as the Rotunda Battery and Antifreeze Tester, 014–R1060). The level of coolant should be maintained at the "FULL COLD" level or within the "COLD FILL RANGE" in the coolant reservoir. If the level falls below, add coolant per the instructions in the *Adding engine coolant* section.

Your vehicle was factory-filled with a 50/50 engine coolant and water concentration. If the concentration of coolant falls below 40% or above 60%, the engine parts could become damaged or not work properly. **A 50–50 mixture of coolant and water provides the following:**

- **Freeze protection down to -34°F (-36°C).**
- **Boiling protection up to 265°F (129°C).**
- **Protection against rust and other forms of corrosion.**
- **Enables calibrated gauges to work properly.**

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

- 5.4L/6.8L



When the engine is cold, check the level of the engine coolant in the reservoir.

- The engine coolant should be at the “FULL COLD” level or within the “COLD FILL RANGE” as listed on the engine coolant reservoir (depending upon application).
- Refer to the *Scheduled Maintenance Guide* for service interval schedules.
- Be sure to read and understand *Precautions when servicing your vehicle* in this chapter.

If the engine coolant has not been checked at the recommended interval, the engine coolant reservoir may become low or empty. If the reservoir is low or empty, add engine coolant to the reservoir. Refer to *Adding engine coolant* in this chapter.

Note: Automotive fluids are not interchangeable; do not use engine coolant, antifreeze or windshield washer fluid outside of its specified function and vehicle location.

Adding engine coolant

When adding coolant, make sure it is a 50/50 mixture of engine coolant and distilled water. Add the mixture to the coolant reservoir, **when the engine is cool**, until the appropriate fill level is obtained.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Do not add engine coolant when the engine is hot. Steam and scalding liquids released from a hot cooling system can burn you badly. Also, you can be burned if you spill coolant on hot engine parts.

Do not put engine coolant in the windshield washer fluid container. If sprayed on the windshield, engine coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.

- **Add Motorcraft Premium Gold Engine Coolant (yellow-colored), VC-7–A (U.S., except CA, OR and NM), VC-7–B (CA, OR and NM), meeting Ford Specification WSS-M97B51–A1.**

Note: Use of Motorcraft Cooling System Stop Leak Pellets, VC-6, may darken the color of Motorcraft Premium Gold Engine Coolant from yellow to golden tan.

- **Do not add/mix an orange-colored, extended life coolant such as Motorcraft Speciality Orange Engine Coolant, VC-2 and VC-3 (US) or CXC-209 (Canada), meeting Ford specification WSS-M97B44–D with the factory-filled coolant.** Mixing Motorcraft Speciality Orange Engine Coolant or any orange-colored extended life product with your factory filled coolant can result in degraded corrosion protection.
- A large amount of water without engine coolant may be added, in case of emergency, to reach a vehicle service location. In this instance, the cooling system must be drained and refilled with a 50/50 mixture of engine coolant and distilled water as soon as possible. Water alone (without engine coolant) can cause engine damage from corrosion, overheating or freezing.
- **Do not use alcohol, methanol, brine or any engine coolants mixed with alcohol or methanol antifreeze (coolant).** Alcohol and other liquids can cause engine damage from overheating or freezing.
- **Do not add extra inhibitors or additives to the coolant.** These can be harmful and compromise the corrosion protection of the engine coolant.

For vehicles with overflow coolant systems with a non-pressurized cap on the coolant recovery system, add coolant to the coolant recovery reservoir when the engine is cool. Add the proper mixture of coolant and water to the “FULL COLD” level. For all other vehicles which have a

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

coolant degas system with a pressurized cap, or if it is necessary to remove the coolant pressure relief cap on the radiator of a vehicle with an overflow system, follow these steps to add engine coolant.

To reduce the risk of personal injury, make sure the engine is cool before unscrewing the coolant pressure relief cap. The cooling system is under pressure; steam and hot liquid can come out forcefully when the cap is loosened slightly.

1. Before you begin, turn the engine off and let it cool.
2. When the engine is cool, wrap a thick cloth around the coolant pressure relief cap on the coolant reservoir (a translucent plastic bottle). Slowly turn cap counterclockwise (left) until pressure begins to release.
3. Step back while the pressure releases.
4. When you are sure that all the pressure has been released, use the cloth to turn it counterclockwise and remove the cap.
5. Fill the coolant reservoir slowly with the proper coolant mixture (see above), to within the “COLD FILL RANGE” or the “FULL COLD” level on the reservoir. If you removed the radiator cap in an overflow system, fill the radiator until the coolant is visible and radiator is almost full.
6. Replace the cap. Turn until tightly installed. (Cap must be tightly installed to prevent coolant loss.)

After any coolant has been added, check the coolant concentration (refer to *Checking engine coolant*). If the concentration is not 50/50 (protection to –34° F/–36° C), drain some coolant and adjust the concentration. It may take several drains and additions to obtain a 50/50 coolant concentration.

Whenever coolant has been added, the coolant level in the coolant reservoir should be checked the next few times you drive the vehicle. If necessary, add enough 50/50 concentration of engine coolant and distilled water to bring the liquid level to the proper level.

If you have to add more than 1.0 quart (1.0 liter) of engine coolant per month, have your dealer check the engine cooling system. Your cooling system may have a leak. Operating an engine with a low level of coolant can result in engine overheating and possible engine damage.

Recycled engine coolant

Ford Motor Company does NOT recommend the use of recycled engine coolant in vehicles originally equipped with Motorcraft Premium Gold Engine Coolant since a Ford-approved recycling process is not yet available.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Used engine coolant should be disposed of in an appropriate manner. Follow your community's regulations and standards for recycling and disposing of automotive fluids.

Coolant refill capacity

To find out how much fluid your vehicle's cooling system can hold, refer to *Refill capacities* in this section.

Fill your engine coolant reservoir as outlined in *Adding engine coolant* in this section.

Severe climates

If you drive in extremely cold climates (less than –34° F [–36° C]):

- **It may be necessary to increase the coolant concentration above 50%.**
- **NEVER increase the coolant concentration above 60%.**
- **Increased engine coolant concentrations above 60% will decrease the overheat protection characteristics of the engine coolant and may cause engine damage.**
- **Refer to the chart on the coolant container to ensure the coolant concentration in your vehicle will provide adequate freeze protection at the temperatures in which you drive in the winter months.**

If you drive in extremely hot climates:

- **It is still necessary to maintain the coolant concentration above 40%.**
- **NEVER decrease the coolant concentration below 40%.**
- **Decreased engine coolant concentrations below 40% will decrease the corrosion protection characteristics of the engine coolant and may cause engine damage.**
- **Decreased engine coolant concentrations below 40% will decrease the freeze protection characteristics of the engine coolant and may cause engine damage.**
- **Refer to the chart on the coolant container to ensure the coolant concentration in your vehicle will provide adequate protection at the temperatures in which you drive.**

Vehicles driven year-round in non-extreme climates should use a 50/50 mixture of engine coolant and distilled water for optimum cooling system and engine protection.

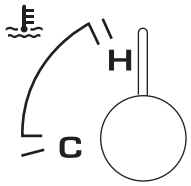
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

What you should know about fail-safe cooling (if equipped)

If the engine coolant supply is depleted, this feature allows the vehicle to be driven temporarily before incremental component damage is incurred. The “fail-safe” distance depends on ambient temperatures, vehicle load and terrain.

How fail-safe cooling works

If the engine begins to overheat:



- The engine coolant temperature gauge will move to the red (hot) area.
- The and symbol will illuminate.
- The *Service engine soon* indicator light will illuminate.

If the engine reaches a preset over-temperature condition, the engine will automatically switch to alternating cylinder operation. Each disabled cylinder acts as an air pump and cools the engine.

When this occurs the vehicle will still operate. However:

- The engine power will be limited.
- The air conditioning system will be disabled.

Continued operation will increase the engine temperature and the engine will completely shut down, causing steering and braking effort to increase.

Once the engine temperature cools, the engine can be re-started. Take your vehicle to a service facility as soon as possible to minimize engine damage.

When fail-safe mode is activated

You have limited engine power when in the fail-safe mode, so drive the vehicle with caution. The vehicle will not be able to maintain high-speed operation and the engine will run rough. Remember that the engine is capable of completely shutting down automatically to prevent engine damage, therefore:

1. Pull off the road as soon as safely possible and turn off the engine.
2. Arrange for the vehicle to be taken to a service facility.
3. If this is not possible, wait a short period for the engine to cool.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

4. Check the coolant level and replenish if low.

Never remove the coolant reservoir cap while the engine is running or hot.

5. Re-start the engine and take your vehicle to a service facility.

Driving the vehicle without repairing the engine problem increases the chance of engine damage. Take your vehicle to a service facility as soon as possible.

WHAT YOU SHOULD KNOW ABOUT AUTOMOTIVE FUELS

Important safety precautions

Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

The fuel system may be under pressure. If the fuel filler cap is venting vapor or if you hear a hissing sound, wait until it stops before completely removing the fuel filler cap. Otherwise, fuel may spray out and injure you or others.

If you do not use the proper fuel filler cap, excessive pressure or vacuum in the fuel tank may damage the fuel system or cause the fuel cap to disengage in a collision, which may result in possible personal injury.

Automotive fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.

Gasoline may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Observe the following guidelines when handling automotive fuel:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before fueling your vehicle.
- Always turn off the vehicle before fueling.
- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel such as gasoline is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed, call a physician immediately, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be visible for hours.
- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling too much fuel vapor of any kind can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.
- Avoid getting fuel liquid in your eyes. If fuel is splashed in the eyes, remove contact lenses (if worn), flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can also be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If fuel is splashed on the skin and/or clothing, promptly remove contaminated clothing and wash skin thoroughly with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact with fuel liquid or vapor causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking “Antabuse” or other forms of disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing gasoline vapors, or skin contact could cause an adverse reaction. In sensitive individuals, serious personal injury or sickness may result. If fuel is splashed on the skin, promptly wash skin thoroughly with soap and water. Consult a physician immediately if you experience an adverse reaction.

When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the filler neck. Never smoke while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Care should be taken to avoid inhaling excess fumes.

The flow of fuel through a fuel pump nozzle can produce static electricity, which can cause a fire if fuel is pumped into an ungrounded fuel container.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Use the following guidelines to avoid static build-up when filling an ungrounded fuel container:

- Place approved fuel container on the ground.
- DO NOT fill a fuel container while it is in the vehicle (including the cargo area).
- Keep the fuel pump nozzle in contact with the fuel container while filling.
- DO NOT use a device that would hold the fuel pump handle in the fill position.

Fuel Filler Cap

Your fuel tank filler cap has an indexed design with a 1/4 turn on/off feature.

When fueling your vehicle:

1. Turn the engine off.
2. Carefully turn the filler cap counterclockwise 1/4 of a turn until it stops.
3. Pull to remove the cap from the fuel filler pipe.
4. To install the cap, align the tabs on the cap with the notches on the filler pipe.
5. Turn the filler cap clockwise 1/4 of a turn until it stops.

If the “Check Fuel Cap” indicator comes on and stays on after you start the engine, the fuel filler cap may not be properly installed. Turn off the engine, remove the fuel filler cap, align the cap properly and reinstall it.

If you must replace the fuel filler cap, replace it with a fuel filler cap that is designed for your vehicle. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the fuel tank or fuel system if the correct genuine Ford or Motorcraft fuel filler cap is not used.

The fuel system may be under pressure. If the fuel filler cap is venting vapor or if you hear a hissing sound, wait until it stops before completely removing the fuel filler cap. Otherwise, fuel may spray out and injure you or others.

If you do not use the proper fuel filler cap, excessive pressure or vacuum in the fuel tank may damage the fuel system or cause the fuel cap to disengage in a collision, which may result in possible personal injury.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Choosing the right fuel

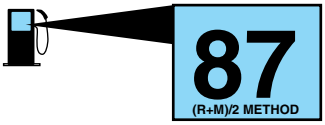
Use only UNLEADED FUEL. The use of leaded fuel is prohibited by law and could damage your vehicle.

Your vehicle was not designed to use fuel or fuel additives with metallic compounds, including manganese-based additives. Studies indicate that these additives can cause your vehicle's emission control system to deteriorate more rapidly. In Canada, premium grade fuel generally contains more metallic additives than regular fuel. We recommend using regular grade fuel. In Canada, many fuels contain metallic additives, but fuels free of such additives may be available; check with your local fuel dealer.

Do not use fuel containing methanol. It can damage critical fuel system components.

Repairs to correct the effects of using a fuel for which your vehicle was not designed may not be covered by your warranty.

Octane recommendations



Your vehicle is designed to use "Regular" unleaded gasoline with pump (R+M)/2 octane rating of 87. We do not recommend the use of gasolines labeled as "Regular" that are sold with octane ratings of 86 or lower in high altitude areas.

Do not be concerned if your engine sometimes knocks lightly. However, if it knocks heavily under most driving conditions while you are using fuel with the recommended octane rating, see your dealer or a qualified service technician to prevent any engine damage.

Fuel quality

If you are experiencing starting, rough idle or hesitation driveability problems, try a different brand of unleaded gasoline. "Premium" unleaded gasoline is not recommended for vehicles designed to use "Regular" unleaded gasoline because it may cause these problems to become more pronounced. If the problems persist, see your dealer or a qualified service technician.

It should not be necessary to add any aftermarket products to your fuel tank if you continue to use high quality fuel of the recommended octane rating. Aftermarket products could cause damage to the fuel system. Repairs to correct the effects of using an aftermarket product in your fuel may not be covered by your warranty.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Many of the world's automakers approved the World-wide Fuel Charter that recommends gasoline specifications to provide improved performance and emission control system protection for your vehicle. Gasolines that meet the World-wide Fuel Charter should be used when available. Ask your fuel supplier about gasolines that meet the World-wide Fuel Charter.

Cleaner air

Ford endorses the use of reformulated "cleaner-burning" gasolines to improve air quality.

Running out of fuel

Avoid running out of fuel because this situation may have an adverse affect on powertrain components.

If you have run out of fuel:

- You may need to cycle the ignition from OFF to ON several times after refueling, to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine.
- Your *Service engine soon* indicator may come on. For more information on the *Service engine soon* indicator, refer to the *Instrument cluster* chapter.

Fuel Filter

For fuel filter replacement, see your dealer or a qualified service technician. Refer to the *scheduled maintenance guide* for the appropriate intervals for changing the fuel filter.

Replace the fuel filter with an authorized Motorcraft part. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the fuel system if an authorized Motorcraft fuel filter is not used.

ESSENTIALS OF GOOD FUEL ECONOMY

Measuring techniques

Your best source of information about actual fuel economy is you, the driver. You must gather information as accurately and consistently as possible. Fuel expense, frequency of fill-ups or fuel gauge readings are NOT accurate as a measure of fuel economy. We do not recommend taking fuel economy measurements during the first 1,000 miles (1,600 km) of driving (engine break-in period). You will get a more accurate measurement after 2,000 miles-3,000 miles (3,000 km–5,000 km).

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Filling the tank

The advertised fuel capacity of the fuel tank on your vehicle is equal to the rated refill capacity of the fuel tank as listed in the *Refill capacities* section of this chapter.

The advertised capacity is the amount of the indicated capacity and the empty reserve combined. Indicated capacity is the difference in the amount of fuel in a full tank and a tank when the fuel gauge indicates empty. Empty reserve is the small amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank after the fuel gauge indicates empty.

The amount of usable fuel in the empty reserve varies and should not be relied upon to increase driving range. When refueling your vehicle after the fuel gauge indicates empty, you might not be able to refuel the full amount of the advertised capacity of the fuel tank due to the empty reserve still present in the tank.

For consistent results when filling the fuel tank:

- Turn the engine/ignition switch to the off position prior to refueling, an error in the reading will result if the engine is left running.
- Use the same filling rate setting (low — medium — high) each time the tank is filled.
- Allow no more than 2 automatic click-offs when filling.
- Always use fuel with the recommended octane rating.
- Use a known quality gasoline, preferably a national brand.
- Use the same side of the same pump and have the vehicle facing the same direction each time you fill up.
- Have the vehicle loading and distribution the same every time.

Your results will be most accurate if your filling method is consistent.

Calculating fuel economy

1. Fill the fuel tank completely and record the initial odometer reading (in miles or kilometers).

2. Each time you fill the tank, record the amount of fuel added (in gallons or liters).

3. After at least three to five tank fill-ups, fill the fuel tank and record the current odometer reading.

4. Subtract your initial odometer reading from the current odometer reading.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

5. Follow one of the simple calculations in order to determine fuel economy:

Calculation 1: **Divide total miles traveled by total gallons used.**

Calculation 2: **Multiply liters used by 100, then divide by total kilometers traveled.**

Keep a record for at least one month and record the type of driving (city or highway). This will provide an accurate estimate of the vehicle's fuel economy under current driving conditions. Additionally, keeping records during summer and winter will show how temperature impacts fuel economy. In general, lower temperatures give lower fuel economy.

Driving style — good driving and fuel economy habits

Give consideration to the lists that follow and you may be able to change a number of variables and improve your fuel economy.

Habits

- Smooth, moderate operation can yield up to 10% savings in fuel.
- Steady speeds without stopping will usually give the best fuel economy.
- Idling for long periods of time (greater than one minute) may waste fuel.
- Anticipate stopping; slowing down may eliminate the need to stop.
- Sudden or hard accelerations may reduce fuel economy.
- Slow down gradually.
- Driving at reasonable speeds (traveling at 55 mph [88 km/h] uses 15% less fuel than traveling at 65 mph [105 km/h]).
- Revving the engine before turning it off may reduce fuel economy.
- Using the air conditioner or defroster may reduce fuel economy.
- You may want to turn off the speed control in hilly terrain if unnecessary shifting between third and fourth gear occurs. Unnecessary shifting of this type could result in reduced fuel economy.
- Warming up a vehicle on cold mornings is not required and may reduce fuel economy.
- Resting your foot on the brake pedal while driving may reduce fuel economy.
- Combine errands and minimize stop-and-go driving.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Maintenance

- Keep tires properly inflated and use only recommended size.
- Operating a vehicle with the wheels out of alignment will reduce fuel economy.
- Use recommended engine oil. Refer to *Lubricant specifications* in this chapter.
- Perform all regularly scheduled maintenance items. Follow the recommended maintenance schedule and owner maintenance checks found in your vehicle *scheduled maintenance guide*.

Conditions

- Heavily loading a vehicle or towing a trailer may reduce fuel economy at any speed.
- Carrying unnecessary weight may reduce fuel economy (approximately 1 mpg [0.4 km/L] is lost for every 400 lb [180 kg] of weight carried).
- Adding certain accessories to your vehicle (for example bug deflectors, rollbars/light bars, running boards, ski/luggage racks) may reduce fuel economy.
- Using fuel blended with alcohol may lower fuel economy.
- Fuel economy may decrease with lower temperatures during the first 8–10 miles (12–16 km) of driving.
- Driving on flat terrain offers improved fuel economy as compared to driving on hilly terrain.
- Transmissions give their best fuel economy when operated in the top cruise gear and with steady pressure on the gas pedal.
- Four-wheel-drive operation (if equipped) is less fuel efficient than two-wheel-drive operation.
- Close windows for high speed driving.

EPA window sticker

Every new vehicle should have the EPA window sticker. Contact your dealer if the window sticker is not supplied with your vehicle. The EPA window sticker should be your guide for the fuel economy comparisons with other vehicles.

It is important to note the box in the lower left corner of the window sticker. These numbers represent the Range of MPG (L/100 km) expected on the vehicle under optimum conditions. Your fuel economy may vary depending upon the method of operation and conditions.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM

Your vehicle is equipped with various emission control components and a catalytic converter which will enable your vehicle to comply with applicable exhaust emission standards. To make sure that the catalytic converter and other emission control components continue to work properly:

- Use only the specified fuel listed.
- Avoid running out of fuel.
- Do not turn off the ignition while your vehicle is moving, especially at high speeds.
- Have the items listed in your *Scheduled Maintenance Guide* performed according to the specified schedule.

The scheduled maintenance items listed in the *Scheduled Maintenance Guide* are essential to the life and performance of your vehicle and to its emissions system.

If other than Ford, Motorcraft or Ford-authorized parts are used for maintenance replacements or for service of components affecting emission control, such non-Ford parts should be equivalent to genuine Ford Motor Company parts in performance and durability.

Do not park, idle, or drive your vehicle in dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, which can start a fire.

Illumination of the *Service engine soon* light, charging system warning light or the temperature warning light, fluid leaks, strange odors, smoke or loss of engine power, could indicate that the emission control system is not working properly.

Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment.

Do not make any unauthorized changes to your vehicle or engine. By law, vehicle owners and anyone who manufactures, repairs, services, sells, leases, trades vehicles, or supervises a fleet of vehicles are not permitted to intentionally remove an emission control device or prevent it from working. Information about your vehicle's emission system is on the Vehicle Emission Control Information Decal located on or near the engine. This decal identifies engine displacement and gives some tune up specifications.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Please consult your *Warranty Guide* for complete emission warranty information.

On board diagnostics (OBD-II)

Your vehicle is equipped with a computer that monitors the engine's emission control system. This system is commonly known as the On Board Diagnostics System (OBD-II). This OBD-II system protects the environment by ensuring that your vehicle continues to meet government emission standards. The OBD-II system also assists the service technician in properly servicing your vehicle. When the *Check engine/Service engine soon* light illuminates, the OBD-II system has detected a malfunction. Temporary malfunctions may cause your *Check engine/Service engine soon* light to illuminate. Examples are:

1. The vehicle has run out of fuel. (The engine may misfire or run poorly.)
2. Poor fuel quality or water in the fuel.
3. The fuel cap may not have been securely tightened.

These temporary malfunctions can be corrected by filling the fuel tank with good quality fuel and/or properly tightening the fuel cap. After three driving cycles without these or any other temporary malfunctions present, the *Check engine/Service engine soon* light should turn off. (A driving cycle consists of a cold engine startup followed by mixed city/highway driving.) No additional vehicle service is required.

If the *Check engine/Service engine soon* light remains on, have your vehicle serviced at the first available opportunity.

Readiness for Inspection/Maintenance (I/M) testing

In some localities, it may be a legal requirement to pass an I/M test of the on-board diagnostics system. If your *Check engine/Service engine soon* light is on, refer to the description in the *Warning lights and chimes* section of the *Instrument Cluster* chapter. Your vehicle may not pass the I/M test with the *Check engine/Service engine soon* light on.

If the vehicle's powertrain system or its battery has just been serviced, the on-board diagnostics system is reset to a "not ready for I/M test" condition. To ready the on-board diagnostics system for I/M testing, a minimum of 30 minutes of city and highway driving is necessary as described below:

- First, at least 10 minutes of driving on an expressway or highway.
- Next, at least 20 minutes driving in stop-and-go, city-type traffic with at least four idle periods.

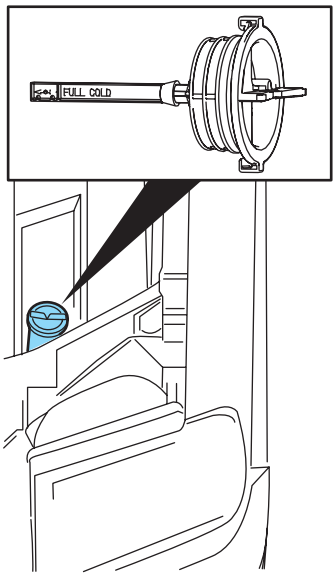
Allow the vehicle to sit for at least eight hours without starting the engine. Then, start the engine and complete the above driving cycle. The

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

engine must warm up to its normal operating temperature. Once started, do not turn off the engine until the above driving cycle is complete.

CHECKING AND ADDING POWER STEERING FLUID

Check the power steering fluid. Refer to the scheduled maintenance guide for the service interval schedules. If adding fluid is necessary, use only MERCON® ATF.



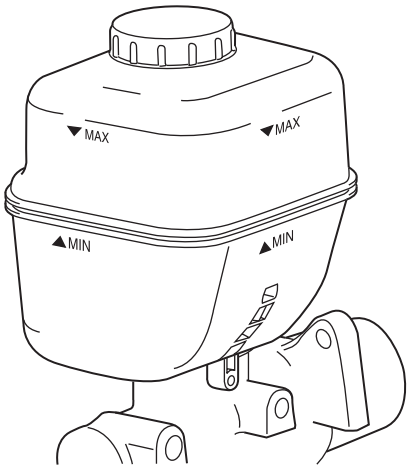
Check the fluid level when it is at ambient temperature, 20° – 80° F (-7° – 25° C):

1. Check the fluid level on the dipstick. It should be between the arrows in the FULL COLD range. Do not add fluid if the level is within this range.
2. If the fluid level is low. Add fluid to bring fluid level up to be between the arrows in the FULL COLD range.
3. Start the engine.
4. While the engine idles, turn the steering wheel left and right several times.
5. Turn the engine off.
6. Recheck the fluid level on the dipstick. Do not add fluid if the level is between the arrows in the FULL COLD range.
7. If the fluid is low, add fluid in small amounts, continuously checking the level until it reaches the FULL COLD range. Be sure to put the dipstick back in the reservoir.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

BRAKE FLUID RESERVOIR

The fluid level will drop slowly as the brakes wear, and will rise when the brake components are replaced. Fluid levels between the “MIN” and “MAX” lines are within the normal operating range; there is no need to add fluid. If the fluid levels are outside of the normal operating range the performance of your brake system could be compromised; seek service from your dealer immediately.



CLUTCH FLUID (IF EQUIPPED)

Check the clutch fluid level. Refer to the *Scheduled Maintenance Guide* for the service interval schedules.

Use only a DOT 3 brake fluid designed to meet Ford specification ESA-M6C25–A. Refer to *Lubricant Specifications* in this chapter.

Brake fluid is toxic. If brake fluid contacts the eyes, flush eyes with running water for 15 minutes. Seek medical attention if irritation persists. If taken internally, drink water and induce vomiting. Seek medical attention immediately.

During normal operation, the fluid level in the clutch reservoir should remain constant or rise slightly. If the fluid level drops, refill the fluid level to the step in the reservoir.

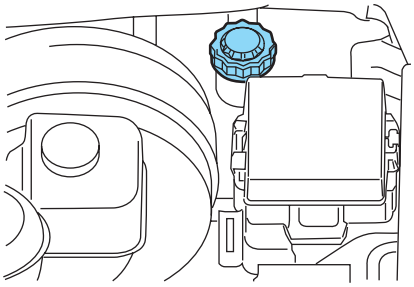
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

1. Clean the reservoir cap before removal to prevent dirt and water from entering the reservoir.

2. Remove cap and rubber diaphragm from reservoir.

3. Add fluid until the level reaches the step in the reservoir.

4. Reinstall rubber diaphragm and cap onto reservoir.



TRANSMISSION FLUID

Checking automatic transmission fluid (if equipped)

Refer to your *Scheduled Maintenance Guide* for scheduled intervals for fluid checks and changes. Your transmission does not consume fluid. However, the fluid level should be checked if the transmission is not working properly, i.e., if the transmission slips or shifts slowly or if you notice some sign of fluid leakage.

Automatic transmission fluid expands when warmed. To obtain an accurate fluid check, drive the vehicle until it is at normal operating temperature (approximately 20 miles [30 km]). If your vehicle has been operated for an extended period at high speeds, in city traffic during hot weather or pulling a trailer, the vehicle should be turned off for about 30 minutes to allow fluid to cool before checking.

1. Drive the vehicle 20 miles (30 km) or until it reaches normal operating temperature.

2. Park the vehicle on a level surface and engage the parking brake.

3. With the parking brake engaged and your foot on the brake pedal, start the engine and move the gearshift lever through all of the gear ranges. Allow sufficient time for each gear to engage.

4. Latch the gearshift lever in P (Park) and leave the engine running.

5. Remove the dipstick, wiping it clean with a clean, dry lint free rag. If necessary, refer to *Identifying components in the engine compartment* in this chapter for the location of the dipstick.

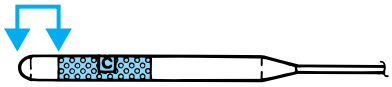
6. Install the dipstick making sure it is fully seated in the filler tube.

7. Remove the dipstick and inspect the fluid level. The fluid should be in the designated area for normal operating temperature or ambient temperature.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Low fluid level

Do not drive the vehicle if the fluid level is at the bottom of the dipstick and the ambient temperature is above 50°F (10°C).

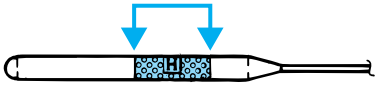


Correct fluid level

The transmission fluid should be checked at normal operating temperature 150°F-170°F (66°C-77°C) on a level surface. The normal operating temperature can be reached after approximately 20 miles (30 km) of driving.

You can check the fluid without driving if the ambient temperature is above 50°F (10°C). However, if fluid is added at this time, an overfill condition could result when the vehicle reaches normal operating temperature.

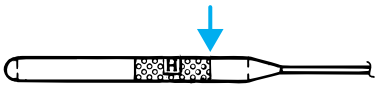
The transmission fluid should be in this range if at normal operating temperature (150°F-170°F [66°C-77°C]).



The transmission fluid should be in this range if at ambient temperature (50°F-95°F [10°C-35°C]).

High fluid level

Fluid levels above the safe range may result in transmission failure. An overfill condition of transmission fluid may cause shift and/or engagement concerns and/or possible damage.



High fluid levels can be caused by an overheating condition.

Adjusting automatic transmission fluid levels

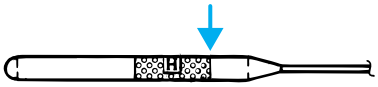
Before adding any fluid, make sure the correct type is used. The type of fluid used is normally indicated on the dipstick and also in the *Lubricant specifications* section in this chapter.

Use of a non-approved automatic transmission fluid may cause internal transmission component damage.

If necessary, add fluid in 1/2 pint (250 ml) increments through the filler tube until the level is correct.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

If an overfill occurs, excess fluid should be removed by a qualified technician.

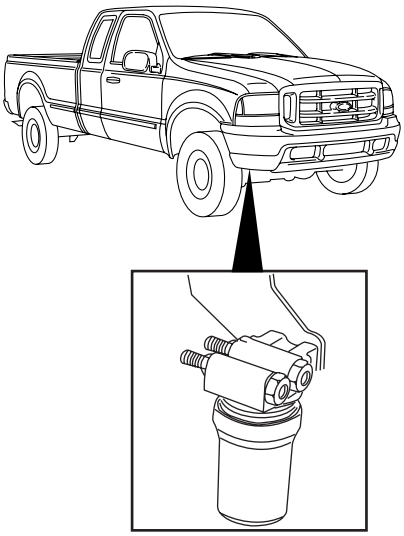


An overfill condition of transmission fluid may cause shift and/or engagement concerns and/or possible damage.

Do not use supplemental transmission fluid additives, treatments or cleaning agents. The use of these materials may affect transmission operation and result in damage to internal transmission components.

Automatic transmission fluid filter (if equipped)

The TorqShift automatic transmission is equipped with a serviceable external fluid filter mounted on the frame rail. Refer to the *Scheduled Maintenance Guide* for service intervals.



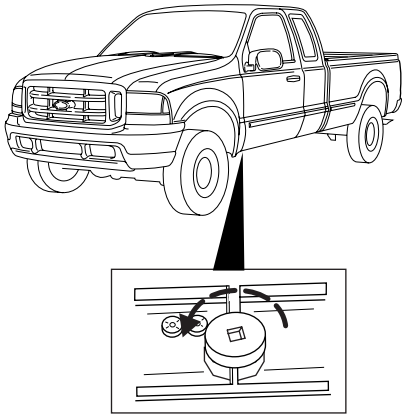
To replace the transmission filter:

1. Shut off the engine.
2. Unscrew filter housing.
3. Replace filter with a new authorized Motorcraft filter element. Refer to the *Motorcraft part numbers* chart in this chapter.
4. Reinstall housing and check transmission fluid level using procedure in this section.

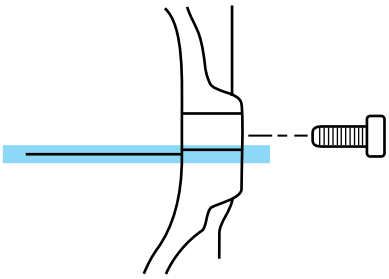
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Checking and adding manual transmission fluid (if equipped)

1. Clean the filler plug.
2. Remove the filler plug and inspect the fluid level.



3. Fluid level should be at the bottom of the opening.
4. Add enough fluid through the filler opening so that the fluid level is at the bottom of the opening.
5. Install and tighten the fill plug securely.

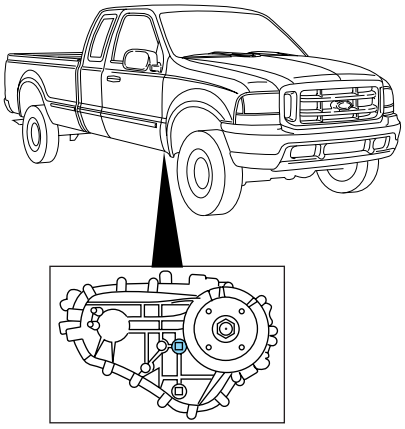


Use only fluid that meets Ford specifications. Refer to *Lubricant specifications* in this chapter.

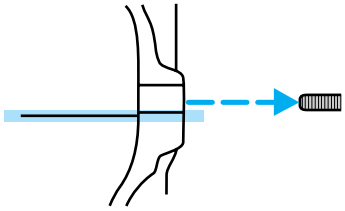
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Checking and adding transfer case fluid (if equipped)

1. Clean the filler plug.
2. Remove the filler plug and inspect the fluid level.



3. Add only enough fluid through the filler opening so that the fluid level is at the bottom of the opening.



Use only fluid that meets Ford specifications. Refer to *Lubricant specifications* in this chapter.

DRIVELINE UNIVERSAL JOINT AND SLIP YOKE

Your vehicle may be equipped with universal joints that require lubrication. Refer to the *Scheduled Maintenance Guide* for maintenance intervals. If the original universal joints are replaced with universal joints equipped with grease fittings, lubrication will also be necessary.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

AIR FILTER MAINTENANCE

Refer to the *scheduled maintenance guide* for the appropriate intervals for changing the air filter element.

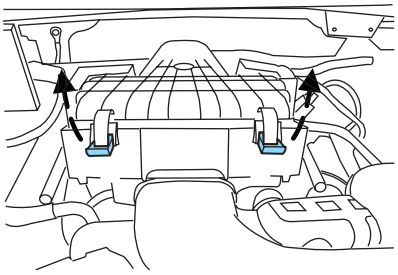
When changing the air filter element, use only the Motorcraft air filter element listed. Refer to *Motorcraft part numbers* in this chapter.

Note: Do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

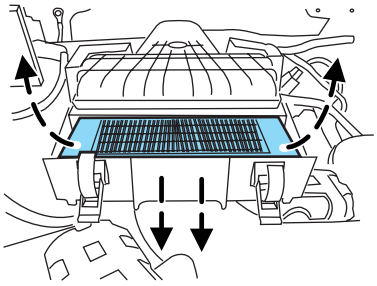
Changing the air filter element

- **5.4L Engine**

1. Release two retainer clamps.



2. Pull air filter tray assembly out toward front of vehicle and lift air filter element up and out of housing.

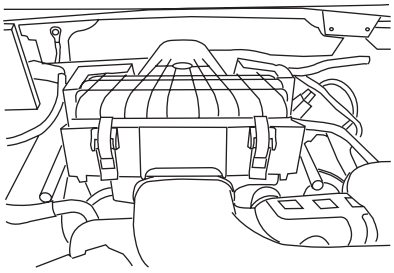


The air filter box needs to be free of any debris before installing a new air filter.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

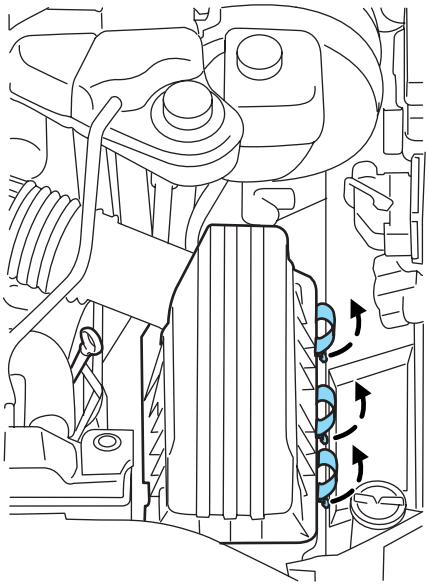
3. Install a new air filter element into the tray assembly.

4. Return air filter tray to original position by pressing firmly on the handle until all rearward movement stops and secure the two clamps.



- **6.8L Engine**

1. Loosen the clamps that secures the air filter cover in place.



2. Carefully separate the two halves of the air filter housing.

3. Remove the air filter element from the air filter housing.

4. Install a new air filter element.

5. Reassemble the two halves of the air filter housing, aligning the notchs and slots. Secure the clamps, making sure not to crimp the air filter edges between the two halves of the air filter housing. This could cause filter damage and allow unmetered air to enter the engine if not properly seated.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

MOTORCRAFT PART NUMBERS

Component	5.4L V8 engine	6.8L V10 engine
Air filter element	FA-1634	FA-1634
Fuel filter	FG-1011	FG-1011
Oil filter	FL-820-S	FL-820-S
PCV valve	[1]	
Battery (Standard)	BXT-65-650	BXT-65-650
Battery (Optional)	BXT-65-750	BXT-65-750
Spark plugs-platinum	[2]	
Remote Automatic Transmission Filter [3]	FT-145	FT–145

[1]The PCV valve is a critical emission component. It is one of the items listed in the *Scheduled Maintenance Guide* and is essential to the life and performance of your vehicle and to its emissions system.

For PCV valve replacement, see your dealer or a qualified service technician. Refer to the *Scheduled Maintenance Guide* for the appropriate intervals for changing the PCV valve.

Replace the PCV valve with one that meets Ford material and design specifications for your vehicle, such as a Motorcraft or equivalent replacement part. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the emissions system if such a PCV valve is not used.

[2]For spark plug replacement, see your dealer or a qualified service technician. Refer to the *Scheduled Maintenance Guide* for the appropriate intervals for changing the spark plugs.

Replace the spark plugs with ones that meet Ford material and design specifications for your vehicle, such as Motorcraft or equivalent replacement parts. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the engine if such spark plugs are not used.

[3]Also available with 6.0L Diesel engine/TorqShift transmission. Part number is FT-145.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

REFILL CAPACITIES

Fluid	Ford Part Name	Application	Capacity
Front axle	Motorcraft SAE 80W-90 Premium Rear Axle Lubricant	F-250/350 (Dana 60 axle)	6.3 pints (3.0L)
		F-350/450/550 (Dana 60 axle)	6.3 pints (3.0L)
Rear axle	Motorcraft SAE 75W-140 Synthetic Rear Axle Lubricant	F-250 /350 (10.50 inch axle) [1]	6.9 pints (3.3L)
	Motorcraft SAE 75W-90 Synthetic Rear Axle Lubricant	F-350 (DANA 80)[1]	8.5 pints (4.0L)
	Motorcraft SAE 75W–140 Synthetic Rear Axle Lubricant	F-450/550 (Dana S110)	14.0 pints (6.6L)
Brake fluid (and clutch fluid-if equipped)	Motorcraft High Performance DOT 3 Motor Vehicle Brake Fluid	All	Fill to line or step (for clutch) on reservoir
Engine coolant [2]	Motorcraft Premium Gold Engine Coolant (yellow-colored)	5.4L V8 engine with A/C	26.4 quarts (25.0L)
		6.8L V10 engine	27.5 quarts (26.0L)

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Fluid	Ford Part Name	Application	Capacity
Engine oil (includes filter change)-Gas engines[6]	Motorcraft SAE 5W-20 Premium Synthetic Blend Motor Oil (US) Motorcraft SAE 5W-20 Super Premium Motor Oil (Canada)	5.4L V8 and 6.8L V10 engines	7.0 quarts (6.6L)
Engine oil (includes filter change)-Diesel engine	Refer to your 6.0L Diesel Supplement		
Fuel tank	N/A	Mid-ship tank (optional on Chassis Cab)	19.0 gallons (71.9L)
		Short box	30.5 gallons (115.5L)
		Long box	38.0 gallons (143.9L)
		Aft axle	40.0 gallons (151.4L)
Power steering fluid	Motorcraft MERCON® ATF	All	Fill to FULL COLD range on dipstick
Transfer case fluid	Motorcraft MERCON® ATF	4x4 vehicles	2.0 quarts (1.9L)
Manual transmission fluid	Motorcraft MERCON® ATF	6-speed manual	5.8 quarts (5.5L) [4]

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Fluid	Ford Part Name	Application	Capacity
Automatic transmission fluid [3]	Motorcraft MERCON® SP ATF	TorqShift (5–speed)	17.5 quarts (16.6L) [5](includes remote filter element change)
Windshield washer fluid	Motorcraft Premium Windshield Washer Concentrate	All	4.25 quarts (4.0L)

[1]Add 8 oz. (236 ml) of Additive Friction Modifier XL-3 or equivalent meeting Ford Specification EST-M2C118–A for complete refill of limited slip axles. Ford design rear axles contain a synthetic lubricant that does not require changing unless the axle has been submerged in water. Dana rear axles also contain a synthetic lubricant but do require a change. Refer to your *Scheduled Maintenance Guide* for change intervals on Dana rear axles.

[2]Add the coolant type originally equipped in your vehicle.

[3]Ensure the correct automatic transmission fluid is used. Transmission fluid requirements are indicated on the end of the dipstick. Check the container to verify the fluid being added is of the correct type. Refer to your *Scheduled Maintenance Guide* to determine the correct service interval.

MERCON®, MERCON® V and MERCON® SP are not interchangeable. DO NOT mix MERCON®, MERCON® V and MERCON® SP. Use of dual usage fluids in an automatic transmission application requiring MERCON® SP may cause transmission damage. Use of a transmission fluid other than the recommended fluid may cause transmission damage.

[4]Service refill capacity is determined by filling the transmission to the bottom of the filler hole with the vehicle on a level surface. The 6–speed manual transmission is equipped with an in-tank cooler. Verify the fluid level after operating vehicle to assure correct fluid level.

[5]Indicates only approximate dry-fill capacity. Some applications may vary based on cooler size and if equipped with an in-tank cooler. The amount of transmission fluid and fluid level should be set by the indication on the dipstick's normal operating range.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

[6]Use of synthetic or synthetic blend motor oil is not mandatory. Engine oil need only meet the requirements of Ford specification WSS-M2C930-A and the API Certification mark.

LUBRICANT SPECIFICATIONS

Item	Ford part name or equivalent	Ford part number	Ford specification
Spindle bearing	High Temperature 4X4 Front Axle and Wheel Bearing Grease	E8TZ-19590–A XG-11 (FAD)	ESA-M1C198–A
Front axle (4X4)	Motorcraft SAE 80W-90 Premium Rear Axle Lubricant	XY-80W-90–QL	WSP-M2C197–A
Rear axle	Motorcraft SAE 75W-140 Synthetic Rear Axle Lubricant (10.5 inch)[1]	XY-75W140–QL	WSL-M2C192-A
	Motorcraft SAE 75W-90 Synthetic Rear Axle Lubricant (Dana 80)[1]	XY-75W90–QLS	WSS–M2C918–A
	Motorcraft SAE 75W–140Synthetic Rear Axle Lubricant (Dana S110 axles)	XY-75W140-QL	WSL–M2C192–A
Brake fluid and clutch fluid (if equipped)	Motorcraft High Performance DOT 3 Motor Vehicle Brake Fluid	PM-1	ESA-M6C25-A and DOT 3

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Item	Ford part name or equivalent	Ford part number	Ford specification
Engine coolant	Motorcraft Premium Gold Engine Coolant (yellow-colored)	VC-7-A (U.S., except CA, OR and NM), VC-7-B (CA, OR and NM)	WSS-M97B51-A1
Engine oil	Motorcraft SAE 5W-20 Premium Synthetic Blend Motor Oil (US) Motorcraft SAE 5W-20 Super Premium Motor Oil (Canada)	XO-5W20-QSP (US) CXO-5W20–LSP12 (Canada)	WSS-M2C930-A and API Certification Mark
Hinges, latches, striker plates, fuel filler door hinge and seat tracks	Multi-Purpose Grease	XG–4 or XL-5	ESR-M1C159-A or ESB-M1C93–B
Lock cylinders	Motorcraft penetrating and lock lubricant	XL-1	none
Transmission /parking brake linkages and pivots, brake and clutch pedal shaft (if equipped)	Motorcraft Premium Long-Life Grease	XG-1-C or XG-1-K	ESA-M1C75-B
Steering linkage	Motorcraft Premium Long-Life Grease	XG-1-C or XG-1-K	WSD-M1C227-A

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Item	Ford part name or equivalent	Ford part number	Ford specification
Power steering fluid and transfer case fluid (if equipped)	Motorcraft MERCON® ATF	XT-2-QDX	MERCON®
Manual transmission (6-speed)	Motorcraft MERCON® ATF [2]	XT-2-QDX	MERCON®
Automatic transmission TorqShift (5–speed)	Motorcraft MERCON® SP ATF [2]	XT-6–QSP	MERCON® SP
Windshield washer fluid	Motorcraft Premium Windshield Washer Concentrate	ZC-32–A	WSB-M8B16–A2

[1]Add 8 oz.(236 ml) of Additive Friction Modifier XL-3 or equivalent meeting Ford specification EST-M2C118-A for complete refill of limited slip axles. Ford design rear axles contain a synthetic lubricant that does not require changing unless the axle has been submerged in water. Dana rear axles also contain a synthetic lubricant but **do** require a change. Refer to your *Scheduled Maintenance Guide* for change intervals on Dana rear axles.

[2]Ensure the correct automatic transmission fluid is used. Transmission fluid requirements are indicated on the end of the dipstick. Check the container to verify the fluid being added is of the correct type. Refer to your *Scheduled Maintenance Guide* to determine the correct service interval.

MERCON®, MERCON® V and MERCON® SP are not interchangeable. DO NOT mix MERCON®, MERCON® V and MERCON® SP. Use of dual usage fluids in an automatic transmission application requiring MERCON® SP may cause transmission damage. Use of a transmission fluid other than the recommended fluid may cause transmission damage.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

ENGINE DATA

Engine	5.4L V8 engine	6.8L V10 engine
Cubic inches	330	415
Required fuel	87 octane	87 octane
Firing order	1-3-7-2-6-5-4-8	1-6-5-10-2-7-3-8-4-9
Spark plug gap	1.02–1.28mm (0.040–0.050 inch)**	1.02–1.28mm (0.040–0.050 inch)**
Ignition system	Coil on plug	Coil on plug
Compression ratio	9.8:1	9.2:1

*Refer to the *6.0 Liter Power Stroke Direct Injection Turbo Diesel Owner's Guide Supplement* for Motorcraft diesel engine service part numbers.

**The 5.4L 3V and 6.8L 3V spark plug gap CANNOT be adjusted.

VEHICLE DIMENSIONS

F–250 Regular Cab and SuperCab

Dimension	Body style			
	Regular Cab 4x2 – inches (mm)	Regular Cab 4x4 – inches (mm)	SuperCab 4x2 – inches (mm)	SuperCab 4x4 – inches (mm)
(1) Overall height	76.5 (1943)	79.1 (2009)	76.8 (1951)[b]	79.4 (2017)[b]
(2) Track - Front/Rear	68.3 (1734)/67.2 (1706)	68.3 (1736) / 67.2 (1706)	68.3 (1734) / 67.2 (1706)	68.3 (1736) / 67.2 (1706)
(3) Overall width	79.9 (2029)	79.9 (2029)	79.9 (2029)	79.9 (2029)
(4) Wheelbase	137.0 (3480)	137.0 (3480)	141.8 (3602)[a] 158.0 (4013)[b]	141.8 (3602)[a] 158.0 (4013)[b]
(5) Overall length	226.4 (5751)	226.4 (5751)	231.2 (5872)[a] 247.4 (6284)[b]	231.2 (5872)[a] 247.4 (6284)[b]
[a]Short Box [b]Long Box				

DEP DEALER E-PROCESS

F–250 Crew Cab

Dimension	Body style			
	Crew Cab 4x2, Short box - inches (mm)	Crew Cab 4x4, Short box - inches (mm)	Crew Cab 4x2, Long box - inches (mm)	Crew Cab 4x4, Long box - inches (mm)
(1) Overall height	77.5 (1969)	80.0 (2032)	77.3 (1963)	79.9 (2029)
(2) Track - Front/Rear	68.3 (1734)/ 67.2 (1706)	68.3 (1736)/ 67.2 (1706)	68.3 (1734)/ 67.2 (1706)	68.3 (1736)/ 67.2 (1706)
(3) Overall width	79.9 (2029)	79.9 (2029)	79.9 (2029)	79.9 (2029)
(4) Wheelbase	156.2 (3967)	156.2 (3967)	172.4 (4379)	172.4 (4379)
(5) Overall length	245.6 (6238)	245.6 (6238)	261.8 (6650)	261.8 (6650)

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

F–350 (except Crew Cab)

Dimension	Body style			
	Regular Cab Chassis Cab - inches (mm)	**SuperCab Chassis Cab - inches (mm)**	**Regular Cab Style Side - inches (mm)**	**SuperCab Style Side - inches (mm)**
(1) Overall height	76.9 (1953)[a] 77.1 (1958)[b] 81.6 (2073)[c] 80.0 (2032)[d]	77.4 (1966)[a] 77.4 (1966)[b] 81.5 (2070)[c] 80.2 (2037)[d]	76.8 (1951)[a] 76.7 (1948)[b] 80.8 (2052)[c] 79.6 (2022)[d]	77.3 (1963)[a,e] 77.1 (1958)[a,f] 77.0 (1956)[b] 81.4 (2068)[c,e] 81.2 (2062)[c,f] 79.6 (2022)[d]
(2a) Track - Front	68.3 (1734)[a] / 68.9 (1751)[b]/ 68.3 (1736)[c] / 69.0 (1753)[d]	68.3 (1734)[a] / 68.9 (1751)[b]/ 68.3 (1736)[c] / 69.0 (1753)[d]	68.3 (1734)[a] / 68.9 (1751)[b]/ 68.3 (1736)[c] / 69.0 (1753)[d]	68.3 (1734)[a] / 68.9 (1751)[b]/ 68.3 (1736)[c] / 69.0 (1753)[d]
(2b) Track - Rear	68.1 (1730)[a,c] / 71.0 (1803)[b,d]	68.1 (1730)[a,c] / 71.0 (1803)[b,d]	67.2 (1706)[a,c] / 74.6 (1896)[b,d]	67.2 (1706)[a, c] / 74.6 (1896)[b, d]
(3) Overall width	79.9 (2029)[a,c] / 92.2 (2342)[b, d]	79.9 (2029)[a,c] / 92.2 (2342)[b,d]	79.9 (2029)[a,c] / 95.5 (2426)[b,d]	79.9 (2029)[a,c] / 95.5 (2426)[b, d]
(4) Wheelbase	140.8 (3576) 164.8 (4186)	161.8 (4110)	137.0 (3480)	141.8 (3602)[e]/ 158.0 (4013)[f]
(5) Overall length	225.6 (5730)[a,b,c,d]/ 249.6 (6340)[b,d]	246.6 (6264)	226.4 (5751)	231.2 (5872)[e]/ 247.4 (6284)[f]

[a]4x2 Single rear wheel (SRW)
[b]4x2 Dual rear wheel (DRW)
[c]4x4 Single rear wheel (SRW)
[d]4x4 Dual rear wheel (DRW)
[e]Short box
[f]Long box

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

F–350 Crew Cab

Dimension	Body style		
	Crew Cab Chassis Cab - inches (mm)	**Crew Cab, Short box - inches (mm)**	**Crew Cab, Long box - inches (mm)**
(1) Overall height	77.9 (1979)[a]/ 77.9 (1979)[b]/ 81.8 (2078)[c]/ 80.8 (2052)[d]	77.8 (1976)[a]/ 77.6 (1971)[b]/ 81.8 (2078)[c]/ 80.1 (2035)[d]	77.6 (1971)[a]/ 77.4 (1966)[b]/ 81.7 (2075)[c]/ 80.0 (2032)[d]
(2a) Track - Front	68.3 (1734)[a] / 68.9 (1751)[b] / 68.3 (1736)[c] / 69.0 (1753) [d]	68.3 (1734)[a] / 68.9 (1751)[b] / 68.3 (1736)[c] / 69.0 (1753) [d]	68.3 (1734)[a] / 68.9 (1751)[b] / 68.3 (1736)[c] / 69.0 (1753) [d]
(2b) Track - Rear	68.1 (1730)[a,c]/ 71.0 (1803)[b,d]	67.2 (1706)[a,c]/ 74.6 (1896)[b,d]	67.2 (1706)[a,c]/ 74.6 (1896)[b,d]
(3) Overall width	79.9 (2029)[a,c]/ 92.2 (2342)[b, d]	79.9 (2029)[a,c]/ 95.5 (2426)[b, d]	79.9 (2029)[a,c] 95.5 (2426)[b,d]
(4) Wheelbase	176.2 (4475)	156.2 (3967)	172.4 (4379)
(5) Overall length	261.60 (6629)	245.6 (6238)	261.8 (6650)

[a]4x2 Single Rear Wheel (SRW)
[b]4x2 Dual Rear Wheel (DRW)
[c]4x4 Single Rear Wheel (SRW)
[d]4x4 Dual Rear Wheel (DRW)

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

F–450

Dimension	Body style			
	Regular Cab Chassis 4x2 – inches (mm)	**Regular Cab Chassis 4x4 – inches (mm)**	**SuperCab Chassis 4x2/4x4 – inches (mm)**	**Crew Cab Chassis 4x2/4x4 – inches (mm)**
(1) Overall height	80.6 (2047)[a] 80.5 (2045)[b,c] 80.2 (2037)[d]	80.7 (2050)[a] 80.5 (2045)[b] 80.0 (2032)[c,d]	80.5 (2045)	80.8 (2052) - 4x2 80.9 (2055) - 4x4
(2) Track - Front / Rear	74.8 (1900) / 74.0 (1880)	74.8 (1900) / 74.0 (1880)	74.8 (1900) / 74.0 (1880)	74.8 (1900) / 74.0 (1880)
(3) Overall width	93.6 (2377)	93.6 (2377)	93.6 (2377)	93.6 (2377)
(4) Wheelbase	140.8 (3576) 164.8 (4186) 188.8 (4796) 200.8 (5100)	140.8 (3576) 164.8 (4186) 188.8 (4796) 200.8 (5100)	161.8 (4110)	176.2 (4475) 200.2 (5085)
(5) Overall length	225.6 (5730)[a] 249.6 (6340)[b] 273.6 (6949)[c] 285.6 (7254)[d]	225.6 (5730)[a] 249.6 (6340)[b] 273.6 (6949)[c] 285.6 (7254)[d]	246.6 (6264)	261.0 (6629)[e] 285.0 (7239)[f]

[a]140.8” (3576 mm) wheel base
[b]164.8” (4186 mm) wheel base
[c]188.8” (4795 mm) wheel base
[d]200.8” (5100 mm) wheel base
[e]176.2” (4475 mm) wheel base
[f]200.2” (5085 mm) wheel base

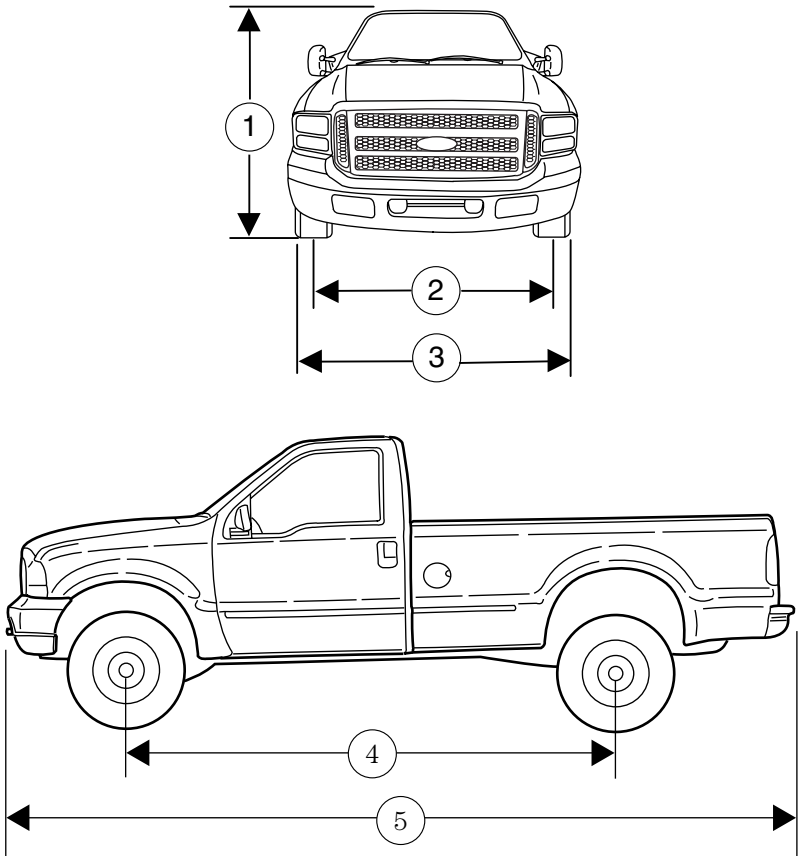
DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

F–550

Dimension	Body style			
	Regular Cab Chassis Cab 4x2 – inches (mm)	**Regular Cab Chassis Cab 4x4 – inches (mm)**	**Crew Cab Chassis Cab 4x2 – inches (mm)**	**Crew Cab Chassis Cab 4x4 – inches (mm)**
(1) Overall height	81.7 (2075)[a] 81.4 (2068)[b,c] 81.1 (2060)[d]	81.7 (2075)[a] 81.2 (2062)[b] 81.1 (2060)[c] 80.7 (2050)[d]	81.5 (2070)	81.4 (2068)
(2) Track - Front / Rear	74.8 (1900) / 74.0 (1880)	74.8 (1900) / 74.0 (1880)	74.8 (1900) / 74.0 (1880)	74.8 (1900) / 74.0 (1880)
(3) Overall width	93.6 (2377)	93.6 (2377)	93.6 (2377)	93.6 (2377)
(4) Wheelbase	140.8 (3576) 164.8 (4186) 188.8 (4796) 200.8 (5100)	140.8 (3576) 164.8 (4186) 188.8 (4796) 200.8 (5100)	161.8 (4110)	176.2 (4475) 200.2 (5085)
(5) Overall length	225.6 (5730)[a] 249.6 (6340)[b] 273.6 (6949)[c] 285.6 (7254)[d]	225.6 (5730)[a] 249.6 (6340)[b] 273.6 (6949)[c] 285.6 (7254)[d]	246.6 (6264)[e]	261.0 (6629)[e] 285.0 (7239)[f]

[a]140.8” (3576 mm) wheel base
[b]164.8” (4186 mm) wheel base
[c]188.8” (4795 mm) wheel base
[d]200.8” (5100 mm) wheel base
[e]176.2” (4475 mm) wheel base
[f]200.2” (5085 mm) wheel base

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

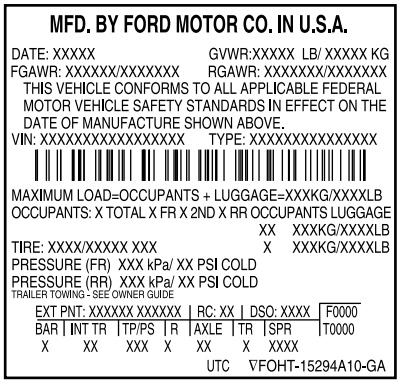


DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

IDENTIFYING YOUR VEHICLE

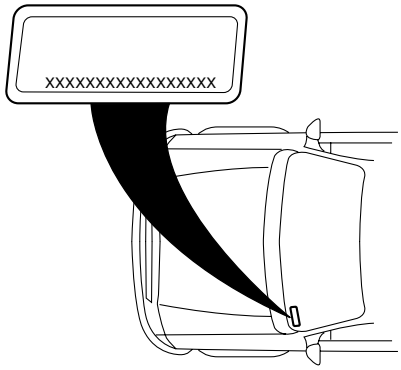
Certification label

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration Regulations require that a Certification label be affixed to a vehicle and prescribe where the Certification label may be located. The Certification label is located on the structure by the trailing edge of the driver's door or the edge of the driver's door.

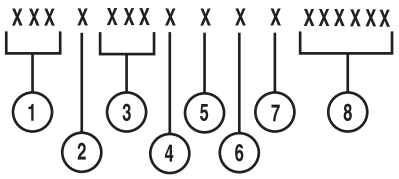


Vehicle identification number (VIN)

The vehicle identification number is attached to a metal tag and is located on the driver side instrument panel. (Please note that in the graphic XXXX is representative of your vehicle identification number.)



DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

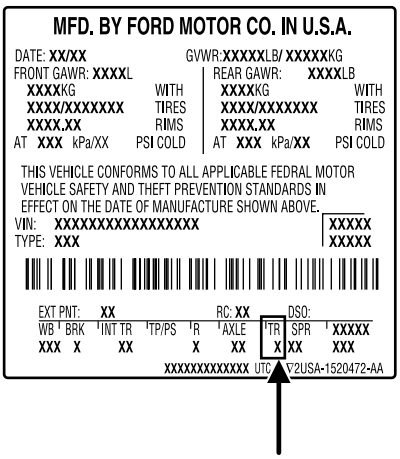


1. World manufacturer identifier
2. Brake type and gross vehicle weight rating (GVWR)
3. Vehicle line, series, body type
4. Engine type
5. Check digit
6. Model year
7. Assembly plant
8. Production sequence number

Engine number

The engine number (the last eight numbers of the vehicle identification number) is stamped on the engine block, transmission, frame and transfer case (if equipped).

Transmission/Transaxle code designations



You can find a transmission/transaxle code on the vehicle certification label. The following table tells you which transmission or transaxle each code represents.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Code	Description
2	Five-speed manual (TR4050)
5	Six-speed manual, Dana (ZF S6–650)
7	Six-speed manual, Dana (ZF M6HD-W)
B	Five-speed automatic, TorqShift

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

GENUINE FORD ACCESSORIES FOR YOUR VEHICLE

A wide selection of Genuine Ford Accessories are available for your vehicle through your local authorized Ford or Ford of Canada dealer. These quality accessories have been specifically engineered to fulfill your automotive needs; they are custom designed to complement the style and aerodynamic appearance of your vehicle. In addition, each accessory is made from high quality materials and meets or exceeds Ford's rigorous engineering and safety specifications. Ford Motor Company will repair or replace any properly dealer-installed Genuine Ford Accessory found to be defective in factory-supplied materials or workmanship during the warranty period, as well as any component damaged by the defective accessory. The accessory will be warranted for whichever provides you the greatest benefit:

- 12 months or 12,000 miles (20,000 km) (whichever occurs first), or
- the remainder of your new vehicle limited warranty.

This means that Genuine Ford Accessories purchased along with your new vehicle and installed by the dealer are covered for the full length of your New Vehicle's Limited Warranty — 3 years or 36,000 miles (60,000 km) (whichever occurs first). Contact your dealer for details and a copy of the warranty.

Not all accessories are available for all models.

The following is a list of several Genuine Ford Accessory products for your vehicle. Not all accessories are available for all models. For a complete listing of the accessories that are available for your vehicle, please contact your dealer or visit our online store at: www.fordaccessoriesstore.com.

Exterior style

Bug shields

Chrome exhaust tip

Deflectors

Exterior trim

Fender flares

Front end covers

Grille inserts

Fog lights and Daytime Running Lamps (DRLs)

Running boards

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Accessories

Sliding rear windows - manual and power
Splash guards
Step bars
Tonneau covers
Wheels

Interior style

Consoles
Electrochromatic compass/temperature interior mirrors
Floor mats
Leather wrapped steering wheels
Scuff plates
Speed control

Lifestyle

Bedliners and bedmats
Bed tents
Bike racks
Cargo organization and management
Diamond plate accessories
Rear seat entertainment systems
Toolboxes
Towing mirrors
TracRac and accessories
Trailer hitches, wiring harnesses and accessories

Peace of mind

First aid and highway safety kits
Full vehicle covers
Locking gas cap
Navigation systems
Remote start
Vehicle security systems

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Accessories

For maximum vehicle performance, keep the following information in mind when adding accessories or equipment to your vehicle:

- When adding accessories, equipment, passengers and luggage to your vehicle, do not exceed the total weight capacity of the vehicle or of the front or rear axle (GVWR or GAWR as indicated on the Safety Compliance Certification label). Consult your dealer for specific weight information.
- The Federal Communications Commission (FCC) and Canadian Radio Telecommunications Commission (CRTC) regulate the use of mobile communications systems — such as two-way radios, telephones and theft alarms - that are equipped with radio transmitters. Any such equipment installed in your vehicle should comply with FCC or CRTC regulations and should be installed only by a qualified service technician.
- Mobile communications systems may harm the operation of your vehicle, particularly if they are not properly designed for automotive use.
- To avoid interference with other vehicle functions, such as anti-lock braking systems, amateur radio users who install radios and antennas onto their vehicle should not locate the Amateur Radio Antennas in the area of the driver's side hood.
- Electrical or electronic accessories or components that are non-Genuine Ford Accessories added to the vehicle by the dealer or the owner may adversely affect battery performance and durability.

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Index

A

Accessory delay 59
Air bag supplemental restraint system 107–108
  and child safety seats 109
  description 108
  disposal 111
  driver air bag 110
  indicator light 111
  operation 110
  passenger air bag 110
  passenger deactivation switch 112
Air cleaner filter 280, 282
Air conditioning 36
Ambulance packages 8
Antifreeze (see Engine coolant) 257
Anti-lock brake system (see Brakes) 183–184
Audio system (see Radio) 20, 22, 25, 28
Automatic transmission 187
  driving an automatic overdrive 188
  fluid, adding 275
  fluid, checking 275
  fluid, refill capacities 283
  fluid, specification 289
Auxiliary power point 57
Axle
  lubricant specifications ..286, 289
  refill capacities 283
  traction lok 186

B

Battery 255
  acid, treating emergencies 255
  jumping a disabled battery 224
  maintenance-free 255
  replacement, specifications ...282
  servicing 255
BeltMinder 103
Brakes 183
  anti-lock 183–184
  anti-lock brake system (ABS) warning light 183
  fluid, checking and adding 274
  fluid, refill capacities 283
  fluid, specifications 286, 289
  lubricant specifications ..286, 289
  parking 184
  shift interlock 187
  trailer 171
Break-in period 5
Bulbs 45

C

Capacities for refilling fluids 283
Cassette tape player 20, 22, 25
Cell phone use 66
Certification Label 296
Child safety restraints 117
  child safety belts 117
Child safety seats 119
  attaching with tether straps ..123
  in front seat 121
  in rear seat 121
Cleaning your vehicle
  engine compartment 241
  instrument panel 243
  interior 244
  interior trim 243
  plastic parts 242
  safety belts 244

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

washing 240
waxing 240
wheels 241
wiper blades 243
Climate control (see Air conditioning or Heating) 36
Clutch
fluid 274
operation while driving 191
recommended shift speeds 191
Compass, electronic
set zone adjustment 70
Console 66
overhead 56
Controls
steering column 65
Coolant
checking and adding 257
refill capacities 261, 283
specifications 286, 289
Cruise control (see Speed control) 62
Customer Assistance 213
Ford accessories for your vehicle 246
Ford Extended Service Plan 237
Getting assistance outside the U.S. and Canada 238
Getting roadside assistance ...213
Getting the service you need 231
Ordering additional owner's literature 238
The Dispute Settlement Board 234
Utilizing the Mediation/Arbitration Program 236

D

Daytime running lamps (see Lamps) 40
Dipstick
automatic transmission fluid 275
engine oil 251
Doors
lubricant specifications 286
Driveline universal joint and slip yoke 279
Driving under special conditions 190, 203, 207
sand 205
snow and ice 208
through water 206, 209

E

Electronic message center ...66, 68
Emergencies, roadside
jump-starting 224
Emergency Flashers 214
Emission control system 271
Engine 289
cleaning 241
coolant 257
diesel 7
fail-safe coolant 262
idle speed control 255
lubrication specifications 286, 289
refill capacities 283
service points 249–250
starting after a collision 214
Engine block heater 182
Engine oil 251
checking and adding 251

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

dipstick 251
filter, specifications 254, 282
recommendations 254
refill capacities 283
specifications 286, 289
Exhaust fumes 183

F

Fail safe coolant 262
Fluid capacities 283
Foglamps 40
Four-Wheel Drive vehicles 195
description 200
driving off road 202
electronic shift 196, 200
indicator light 197
lever operated shift 197
manual locking hubs 196
preparing to drive your vehicle 186
Fuel 263
calculating fuel economy 71, 267
cap 265
capacity 283
choosing the right fuel 266
comparisons with EPA fuel economy estimates 270
detergent in fuel 267
filling your vehicle with fuel 263, 265, 268
filter, specifications 267, 282
fuel pump shut-off switch 214
improving fuel economy 267
octane rating 266, 289
quality 266
running out of fuel 267
safety information relating to automotive fuels 263
Fuel pump shut-off switch 214
Fuses 215–216

G

Gas cap (see Fuel cap) 265
Gas mileage (see Fuel economy) 267
Gauges 16
transmission fluid temperature gauge 20

H

Hazard flashers 214
Head restraints 89
Headlamps 39
aiming 41, 43
autolamp system 39
daytime running lights 40
flash to pass 41
high beam 41
replacing bulbs 46, 48–49
turning on and off 39
Heating
heating and air conditioning system 33–34, 36
Hood 248

I

Ignition 178, 289
Infant seats (see Safety seats) 119
Inspection/maintenance (I/M) testing 272

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Instrument panel
cleaning 243
cluster 12
lighting up panel and interior 41

J

Jump-starting your vehicle 224

K

Keyless entry system 85
Keys
positions of the ignition 178

L

Lamps
autolamp system 39
daytime running light 40
fog lamps 40
headlamps 39
headlamps, flash to pass 41
instrument panel, dimming 41
interior lamps 45
replacing bulbs 45–46, 48–49, 51–53
Lane change indicator (see Turn signal) 44
Lights, warning and indicator 12
anti-lock brakes (ABS) 183
speed control 64
Load limits 160
Loading instructions 167
Locks
childproof 80
Lubricant specifications ...286, 289
Lug nuts 148
Lumbar support, seats 94

M

Manual transmission 191
fluid capacities 283
lubricant specifications 289
reverse 192
Message center 66, 68–69
english/metric button 73
system check button 72
warning messages 74
Mirrors 55, 59
automatic dimming rearview mirror 59
fold away 61
heated 60
side view mirrors (power) 59
signal 60
Moon roof 56
Motorcraft parts 267, 282

O

Octane rating 266
Oil (see Engine oil) 251
Overdrive 55

P

Parking brake 184
Parts (see Motorcraft parts) 282
Pedals (see Power adjustable foot pedals) 62
Power adjustable foot pedals 62
Power distribution box (see Fuses) 221
Power door locks 79
Power mirrors 59
Power point 57

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

Power steering 185
fluid, checking and adding 273
fluid, refill capacity 283
fluid, specifications 286, 289
Power Windows 57
Preparing to drive your vehicle 186

R

Radio 20, 22, 25, 28
Relays 215
Remote entry system 81
illuminated entry 84
locking/unlocking doors 79
Reverse sensing system 193
Roadside assistance 213

S

Safety Belt Maintenance 107
Safety belts (see Safety restraints) 96–100
Safety defects, reporting 239
Safety restraints 96–100
belt minder 103
extension assembly 106
for adults 97–100
for children 116–117
lap belt 101
safety belt maintenance 107
warning light and chime 102–103
Safety seats for children 119
Seat belts (see Safety restraints) 96
Seats 89
child safety seats 119
cleaning 244
Servicing your vehicle 247
Snowplowing 8, 210–212
Spark plugs, specifications 282, 289
Special notice 9
ambulance conversions 8
diesel-powered vehicles 7
four-wheel drive vehicles 212
utility-type vehicles 7
Specification chart, lubricants 286, 289
Speed control 62
Starting your vehicle 178–179, 182
jump starting 224
Steering wheel
controls 65
tilting 55

T

Tailgate 77–78
Tilt steering wheel 55
Tires 130–132
alignment 156
care 155
changing 141
checking the pressure 133
inspecting and inflating 133
label 154
replacing 136
rotating 157
safety practices 156
sidewall information 149
snow tires and chains 159
spare tire 137–138
terminology 132
tire grades 131

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

treadwear 131, 155
Towing 167
Trailer Brake Controller-Integrated 171
trailer towing 167
wrecker 229
Traction-lok rear axle 186
Trailer Brake Controller-Integrated 171
Transfer case
fluid checking 279
Transmission
automatic operation 55, 187
brake-shift interlock (BSI) 187
fluid, checking and adding (automatic) 275
fluid, checking and adding (manual) 278
fluid, refill capacities 283
lubricant specifications ..286, 289
manual operation 191
Turn signal 44

V

Vehicle dimensions 289
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 296
Vehicle loading 160
Ventilating your vehicle 183

W

Warning lights (see Lights) 12
Washer fluid 251
Water, Driving through 209
Windows
power 57
Windshield washer fluid and wipers 54
checking and adding fluid 251
replacing wiper blades 54
Wrecker towing 229

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS

DEP
DEALER E-PROCESS